



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



42  
Eφ

A BRIEF

# SPANISH GRAMMAR

WITH

HISTORICAL INTRODUCTIONS AND EXERCISES

BY

A. HJALMAR EDGREN, PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES AND SANSKRIT IN THE UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA



47129  
20/12/99

BOSTON, U. S. A.

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

1899

*Copyright*, 1891 and 1899,  
BY D. C. HEATH & Co.

---

PRESSWORK BY C. H. HEINTZEMANN, BOSTON.

## PREFACE.

---

THIS brief grammar is intended primarily for college-classes and such students generally as would begin reading Spanish, without waste of time, on the basis of an accurate knowledge of the *essentials* of its grammar.

It contains, therefore, a methodical survey of Spanish *Pronunciation* and *Accidence* (with exercises), *Syntax*, and *Versification*. For self-evident reasons, the pronunciation of Spanish is explained, in the usual way, by the aid of English key-words, instead of phonetic rules. Kindred pronoun-groups are classified with reference to their real scientific distinction into *tonic* and *atonic*. Auxiliary verbs are classified and described with the irregular verbs, where they belong, and the so-called "compound" (i.e. periphrastic) conjugations are explained in a few brief paragraphs. To begin with what is very irregular in order to be able to devote pages to what is a simple syntactical combination involves needless confusion and loss of time, especially in Spanish, with its periphrastic active, passive, and progressive conjugations, each having two or more auxiliaries. Especial care has been taken to make the chapter on verb-inflection both full and simple. It is hoped that the method of classification here adopted, reducing the number of irregular verbs to about thirty by conjugating all other verbs according to eight models (three leading, as usual, and five subordinate), will materially simplify a difficult and important topic. The General

Index contains a full reference-list to all verbs that deviate in any way (save orthographically) from the three leading model-verbs.

The exercises are prepared with exclusive reference to the topic in hand. Hence they are purposely simple, those on the verbs being even confined almost entirely to a direct drill on the various forms of a great variety of representative verbs. Moreover, they are all placed at the end of the book, where they will not impede reference to the grammar or disturb its methodical presentation.

For the benefit of those interested, each chapter is introduced parenthetically, and in a way not to obstruct the regular study of the grammar, by a brief sketch of the relation between Latin and Spanish as regards the subject therein treated. The encouragement attending the introduction of such a method into the author's French grammar has led him to adopt it, on a reduced scale, also here.

The author is indebted for guidance and for various illustrative examples to other grammars. Among these should be mentioned especially the well-known works of Foerster (*Spanische Sprachlehre*) and Wiggers (*Grammatik der spanischen Sprache*), and Knapp's elaborate and useful Spanish Grammar. Special thanks are due and gladly extended to Professor Edw. S. Joynes for generous aid in more than one respect, and to Professor C. F. Kroeh of Hoboken, for helpful assistance in the reading of the proofs.

A. H. E.

UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA, 1891.



# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE.
The Spanish Language: History . . . . .	1-2
<b>I. Elementary Sounds and Accent.</b>	
History . . . . .	3
Alphabet and Subsidiary Signs . . . . .	3-4
Tone-accent and Accent-mark . . . . .	4-5
Quantity . . . . .	5
Syllabication . . . . .	5
Pronunciation . . . . .	6-9
Simple Vowels 6. — Vowel-compounds 6-7. — Consonants 7-9.	
Orthographical and Phonetic Changes . . . . .	9
Elision . . . . .	10
Capitals and Punctuation . . . . .	10
<b>II. Articles.</b> . . . . .	11
<b>III. Nouns.</b>	
History . . . . .	12
Plural Formation . . . . .	12-13
Gender . . . . .	14-16
Qualifying Suffixes . . . . .	16-17
<b>IV. Adjectives.</b>	
History . . . . .	18
Inflection plur. and fem. formation) . . . . .	18-19
Comparison . . . . .	19-20
Qualifying Suffixes . . . . .	20
<b>V. Numerals</b>	
History . . . . .	21
Cardinals and Ordinals . . . . .	21-22
Inflection, etc. . . . .	22

	PAGE.
<b>VI. Pronouns.</b>	
History . . . . .	22-23
Personals and Reflexives . . . . .	23-25
Possessives . . . . .	25-26
Demonstratives . . . . .	26
Interrogatives . . . . .	27
Relatives . . . . .	27
Indefinites . . . . .	27-28
<b>VII. Verbs.</b>	
History . . . . .	28-29
Conjugations . . . . .	29
Principal Parts . . . . .	30-31
Regular Verbs . . . . .	31-39
<i>Amar, temer, partir</i> , 31-34.— Orthographical changes 34-35.— Phonetical variations 35-39 [ <i>pensar</i> -class 36; — <i>sentir</i> -class 37; — <i>pedir</i> -class 37; — <i>huir</i> -class 38].	
Irregular Verbs . . . . .	39-45
General description 39-40.— Reference-list 40-44.— Defective verbs 44-45.	
Periphrastic Verb-Phrases . . . . .	45-46
Periphrastic actives 45.— passives 45-46.— progressives 46.	
Reflexive or Reciprocal Verbs . . . . .	46-47
<b>VIII. Indeclinables.</b>	
Adverbs . . . . .	47-49
Prepositions . . . . .	49
Conjunctions . . . . .	49-50
Interjections . . . . .	50
<b>SYNTAX.</b>	
<b>IX. Articles.</b>	
Definite Article . . . . .	51-53
Idiomatic use 51-53.— Omission 53.	
Indefinite Article . . . . .	53-54
<b>X. Nouns.</b>	
Direct object with <i>d</i> . . . . .	54-56
Prepositional construction . . . . .	56-57

	PAGE.
<b>XI. Adjectives.</b>	
Agreement . . . . .	57-58
Position . . . . .	58-59
<b>XII. Numerals . . . . .</b>	60
<b>XIII. Pronouns.</b>	
Personals . . . . .	61-63
Possessives . . . . .	63-64
Demonstratives . . . . .	64
Interrogatives and Relatives . . . . .	65-66
Indefinites . . . . .	66-67
<b>XIV. Verbs.</b>	
Agreement . . . . .	68
Indicative Tenses . . . . .	68-70
Present 68. — Imperfect 69. — Preterit 69. — Future and Conditional 70.	
Subjunctive . . . . .	70-74
Independent 70. — Dependent 71-73. — Tenses 74.	
Infinitive . . . . .	74-78
As noun 74-75. — Without preposition 75. — With preposition 75-77. — As verb 77-78.	
Gerund . . . . .	78
Past Participle . . . . .	79
<b>XV. Indeclinables.</b>	
Sundry Adverbs. . . . .	80-81
Negation . . . . .	81-83
Conjunctions . . . . .	83
<b>XVI. Arrangement of Sentence . . . . .</b>	83-84
VERSIFICATION . . . . .	85-88
Rhythm 85. — Syllabic Number 85-87. — Rhyme, Assonance and Blank Verse 87-88. — Strophes and Poems 88.	
SPANISH WORDS IN ENGLISH . . . . .	89-90
EXERCISES . . . . .	93-130
SPANISH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	131
ENGLISH-SPANISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	140
INDEX . . . . .	151



## THE SPANISH LANGUAGE.

---

SPANISH, Portuguese, French, Italian, Rhæto-Romanic (southern Switzerland), and Rumanian (northern Turkey), constitute a group of languages which, having sprung from popular Latin, are called **Romance** or **Romanic** (i. e. 'Roman'), or *Neo-Latin* ('New-Latin').

From the time that Iberia was conquered by the Romans (206–25 B. C.) and made a Roman province, **popular Latin** gradually supplanted the native Iberian and Celtiberian dialects (the Basque however, in part surviving to the present day). Only about one hundred words, chiefly Basque, have found their way into Spanish, e. g.: *guija* 'pebble,' *modorra* 'drowsiness,' *gazusa* 'sharp hunger.'

The conquest by the Visigoths, in the beginning of the fifth century of our era, brought the **Teutonic** speech into Spain. For a short time it rivaled, and in official use even supplanted the Roman idiom. In the beginning of the seventh century, however, its influence vanished. It has bequeathed to the Spanish language nearly four hundred words, e. g.: *guerra* 'war,' *esquife* 'skiff, boat,' *banco* 'bench,' *norte* 'north,' *gualdo* (obsol.) 'yellow,' *rico* 'rich,' *robar* 'rob,' *ropa* 'cloth, robe,' etc.

The conquest of the larger portion of Spain by the Moors (711), and their dominion there during centuries

until 1492, had a yet greater influence on the Spanish language, which now contains nearly twice as many words of Arabic origin as of Teutonic. These words, for the most part names of external objects and technical terms, can often be recognized by their initial *al-* (the Arabic article). Examples are: *alcalde* 'judge,' *algebra* 'algebra,' *algodon* 'cotton,' *almena* 'turret,' *alcázar* 'castle,' *almone-da* 'auction,' *algazara* 'noise,' *aceite* 'oil,' *fulano* 'a certain,' *hasta* 'to,' etc.

Among many Spanish dialects developed from the early Romanic speech in Spain, the **Castilian**, favored by political circumstances, earliest assumed literary form (in the sixteenth century) and preponderating position. It thus gradually approached the rank of a national language. In the sixteenth century its development into modern Spanish was in the main completed. Few changes, except in idioms and syntax, have since then been made. Its influence during that century reached far beyond the borders of Spain, the Castilian being then, like the French of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, largely the language of polite Europe. It is now the official language of the nation, and also the language of culture, except in Catalonia, Navarre, and the Basque provinces. By the conquests of Spain in the New World it has also, with slight dialectic variations, become the cultured idiom of a large part of America.

Aside from its Iberian, vulgar Latin, Teutonic and Arabic elements, the Castilian has been enriched, like other European languages, by a constant influx of foreign words, especially Greek and Latin.

# SPANISH GRAMMAR.

---

## I.

### *Elementary Sounds and Accent.*

[1. **HISTORY.**—These historical notes, intended simply for the more ambitious classical student who may wish to have some idea of the main laws governing the evolution of Latin into Spanish, necessarily give but the briefest hints of these laws, which in part are of a very intricate or recondite nature. The phonetic relations indicated below apply to most words brought into Spain directly by the Romans, and not changed by false analogy. Words imported later shared in them only more or less imperfectly.

**A. Accent.** The Latin accent position usually remained unchanged in Spanish. It is then to be observed that nouns, etc., survived in their accusative (not their nominative) form: L. *amorem* (not *amor*); Sp. *amor*.

**B. Vowels.** Already popular Latin merged *ī, ū* with *ē, ō*; *æ, œ* with *ē*; and dropped penults (save *a*). Later we observe: 1. *Accent-vowels*: only *ē, ō, au* changed spontaneously, viz. to *ie, ue, o*; but any vowel (save *ī, ū*) was apt to be influenced by a neighboring palatal (*k, g, q*, diphthongal *e-i*), or labial or *l*. Thus: *a, ē, ō* near a palatal = *e, i, u*; *ē, ō* = *e(i)*; *a, ō* near *u* = *o*; *al* = *o*. 2. *Accentless vowels*: these were usually unchanged (except partly by palatal influence as above; and diphthongal *e-i* = *y*); but final *-e* was lost, except after consonant group or *b, v*.

**C. Consonants.** These were often lost or changed. Thus: 1. *Single consonants*: *b, d, g* were lost before diphthongal *e-, i-*, and often between vowels; final *-m* was lost, or (in monosyll.) = *n*; surds between vowels became sonant; *f* often = *h*; *x* = *j*; initial *s-* = *es-* before a surd. 2. Two consonants were frequently reduced to one, some of them then merging into a new sound (such as initial *ll, l*, or medial *ch, j, z, ñ, x*); but *rl, nr, nr* = *rdl, mbr, ndr*.]

---

2. **ALPHABET.** Spanish uses the *same* written letters as English with the addition of *ñ*, i. e. 'n with *tilde*' (Lat. *titulus* 'sign').



NOTE. — *Ch* and *ll* are inserted as special signs into the alphabet, while *k* and *w*, used only in foreign words, are omitted in its enumeration. The letters of the alphabet are named in Spanish: *a, be, ce, che, de, e, efe, ge, hache, i, jota, ele, elle, eme, ene, eñe, o, pe, cu, ere, ese, te, u, ve, équis* (x), *y griega, zeda*; (+ *ke, ve doble*).

3. The diæresis ( *¨* ) is placed over *u* to denote that it is not mute before *e* and *i*: *argüür*.

4. ACCENT. The accent (tone-emphasis) of Spanish words, which may rest on any syllable, is either left unmarked, or denoted by an accent-mark ( *'* ). When unmarked it rests:

*a.* On the penult, if the word ends in a vowel (diphthong and triphthong inclusive: *io*); or in *-s, -n* (which for the most part are inflectional endings added to words in a vowel): *casa, casas; amo, amas, aman, jöven; pa-triá* (7. c), *ama-bâis, paciën-ciâ, al-guïen* (*u* but a graphic sign: 9); *dese-o* (*eo* not a diphthong, *io. b*), *dese-as, dese-an*.

*b.* On the final syllable, if it ends in another consonant than *-s, -n* (*y* being then counted as a consonant): *ciudad, error, reloj, feliz: estoy*.

5. The accent-mark is used: —

*a.* On a few monosyllables, viz.: 1. *á* 'to,' *é* 'and,' *ó* (*ú*) 'or'; — 2. the Interrogatives *qué, quién, cuál*; — 3. preterits: *fuí* (*uí* diphthong: *io*), *fué, dió*, etc.; — 4. the more emphatic of some homonyms: *dé* 'I (he) give': *de* 'of'; *él* 'he': *el* 'the'; *mi* 'me': *mi* 'my'; *más* 'more': *mas* 'but'; *sí* refl. pron.; 'yes': *si* 'if'; *sé* 'I know': *se* refl. pron.; *tú* 'thou': *tu* 'thy', etc.

*b.* On a tonic (i.e. accented) end-syllable terminating in a vowel (diphthong and triphthong inclusive), or in *-s, -n*: *amé, amaré, contendré; Ben-juí, acari-cié, averi-guó; jamás, además, burlón, amardn; a-más, des-pués, mi-llión, para-biën; amorti-gudis; a-ún* 'yet' (dissyllabic when it follows the verb; but *aun*, diphthongal, when preceding it).

*c.* On a tonic penult when the word ends in another consonant than *-s, -n*: *mármol, ángel, alférez; Huércal, Liétor*.



d. On tonic *i* or *u* of dissyllabics and trisyllabics, to show that they are not diphthongs and triphthongs (10): *ra-íz, ba-úl, di-a, re-ír, temi-a, temi-ais, Isai-as, o-ído*; but *seguí-do* (where *u* is but a graphic sign: 9).

e. On any tonic syllable preceding the penult: *régulo, régimen; viéramos, héro-e* (oe dissyllabic); *cláusula*.

f. On the Demonstratives *éste, ése* and *aqué!* (masc. or fem., sing. or pl.), when used without their noun or emphatically; and on Interrogative pronouns and adverbs; *quiénes? cómo; cómo?, etc.*

g. On *sólo* 'only' (*adv.*), to distinguish it from *solo* 'alone' (*adj.*).

h. On members of a compound, and adjectives before *-mente*, that should have the accent-mark if used alone: *décimo-séptimo; cortés-mente*.

Accented verb-forms retain their own accent-mark before appended pronouns; and they are accented according to e., if the accent precedes the penult: *fuése* (for *fué se*), *vióse, rególes, dásele, dándomelos* (for *dando me los*).

NOTE. — The principles of accentuation have varied from time to time, and the above system, prescribed by the Spanish Academy, 1888, is adopted only in recent publications. Older texts (yet largely in use) will ordinarily have no accent on oxytones in uninflectional *-n, -s*, nor, some, on tonic *i, u* of dissyllabics and trisyllabics; while they do accent paroxytones of words in uninflectional *-n, -s*.

## 6. QUANTITY. a. The tonic (= accented) vowel is

long before another vowel, and before one consonant, or a mute with a liquid (*r, l*): — *día, leo; mano, pido; padre, libro*.

short in other cases (though less so as final or before final consonant): — *este, hombre; dará, virtud*.

b. The atonic vowel is always short. .

## 7. SYLLABICATION.

a. A single consonant or consonant-digraph (*ch, ll, rr*), and also a mute with a liquid (*l, r*), belong to the following vowel: — *fá-cil, a-la-me-da, he-cho, ca-lle, pe-rro; pa-dre, ha-blar*.

b. Otherwise one consonant goes with the preceding vowel: *es-tar, nues-tro*. *S*, however, never combines with a following consonant: *obs-curo*.

c. Diphthongs are not separated: *pa-triá, a-guá, búe-no*.

NOTE 1. — *X* usually divides into *c-s*.

NOTE 2. — Compounds usually divide according to their elements: *des-em-bar-car*.

### *Pronunciation.*

**8. SIMPLE VOWELS.** All simple vowels, whether tonic or not, are uttered with a clear, full sound, though relatively long or short according to §6.

**9. THE PRONUNCIATION** of each is as follows:<sup>1</sup>—

**a** = *a* in English 'ah':— *ama, amar*.

**e** = (1) close like *a* in 'fame' (but without its 'vanish') when it ends a syllable, save before *ll, rr*; (2) like *e* in 'met' in other cases:—(1) *te-me-ré, le-che, me-tro*; (2) *el, tes-ta, ter-mas, e-rror*.

**i** = *i* in 'police':— *ibis, infirmar*.

**o** = (1) *o* in 'no' (without 'vanish') when it ends a syllable, except before *ll, rr*; (2) slightly more open (as in German *sollen*) in other cases:—(1) *no, bo-da, po-bre*; (2) *con, con-tra, os-tra, to-rrente*.

**u** = *u* in 'rule':— *uno, uva, busca*.

Unless marked with diæresis (\*\*) it is only a silent graphical sign, however, between *g* or *q* and *e* or *i* (i. e., *gue, gui, que, qui* = *ge,<sup>2</sup> gi,<sup>2</sup> ke, ki*):— *guerra, guisa, quedar, quinto*; but *argüir* (*argooir*).

**y** = *i*, when not followed by a vowel; otherwise = Engl. *y* forcibly enounced:—(= *i*) *y, muy, hay*; (= *y*) *yo, yerno*.

**10. VOWEL-COMPOUNDS.** These are:

*a. Diphthongs* and *triphthongs*, which, consisting the former of

<sup>1</sup> Accent words in a vowel on the penult, others on the final syllable (cf. §4).

<sup>2</sup> *g* as in 'go.'

a weak and lightly uttered vowel (*i, u, y*) combined with a strong (*a, e, o*), or of two weak of which one has a fuller pronunciation, and the latter of a strong vowel between two weak, form one syllable: diphth. *bien*,<sup>1</sup> *bueno*, *reina*, *ley*, *patria*, *agua*, *paciencia*; *viuda*, *ruido*; triphth. *guay*, *apreciais*, *amortiguais*.

*b. Dissyllabics*, which, consisting of two strong vowels, or a strong vowel (or diphthong) and an accented weak, form two syllables: *de-o*, *dese-o*, *pa-ón*, *ma-estro*, *hé-ro-e*; *ra-ís*, *ba-úl*, *temi-a*, *fali-a*; *teml-ais*, *Isai-as*.

NOTE. — Prosodic deviations from this general distinction between vowel-compounds forming one or two syllables are not infrequent (cf §190, note 1).

---

EXERCISE I., end of the book.

---

**11. CONSONANTS.** The consonants that differ from the English in their utterance are those described below:—

**b, v** = *b* uttered without full contact of the lips (in Spain; in Mexico = *b, v*, resp.): — *sublime*, *beber*, *saber*; *aver*, *volver*.

**c** = *k*, except before *e, i*, where it sounds like *th* in 'thin' (or, less good, like pure *s*): — (k) *casa*, *col*, *claro*; (th) *cera*, *cima*, *pacien<sup>ci</sup>á*.

**cc** = *k'th*: *acción* (= *akthi<sup>o</sup>n*).

**ch** = *ch* in 'chest' (always): — *cha*, *noche*, *chico*, *muchacho*.

---

<sup>1</sup> The fuller vowel is marked with heavy type.

**d** = *d*. As final it may often verge on the sonant *th* in 'bathe,' but this pronunciation is nowise general:—*dorar*; *amado ciudad*.

NOTE.—The indistinct sound is also often given to *d* between vowels especially in endings like *-ado*, *-ido*, *-eda*, etc. Familiarly the participial ending *-ado* is even *-ao*. The Academy, however, admits only pure *d*.

**g** = *g* in 'go,' except before *e*, *i*, where it is a rough aspirate nearly resembling *ch* in German *ach*:—*gala*, *grana digno*; (*h*) *general*, *gitano*, *aflige*.

*gue*, *gui* = *ge*, *gi* (*g* hard), cf. *u*.

**h** is practically silent everywhere:—*hablar*, *he*; *huevo*.

**j** = rough aspirate *h* (always):—*jarro*, *joven*, *hijo*, *mujer*.

**ll** = *l'y*, i. e. *lli* in 'millión'; in familiar speech often = *y* in 'boy':—*calle* (*cal'ye*, or, less elegantly, *ca-ye*); *llave ella*.

**ñ** = *n'y*, i. e. *ni* in 'onion':—*año* (*an'yo*), *leña*, *señora*.

**qu** = English *k*:—*que*, *quinto*, *quepa*.

**r** = (1) strongly trilled tongue-tip *r*, when initial in single words or members of compounds, and after *l*, *n*, *s*; (2) less trilled *r*, in other cases:—(1) *rama*, *son-reido*, *honra*, *alrota*; (2) *arar*, *amor*, *pedra*.

*rr* form one sharp somewhat protracted *r*-sound: *pe-rro*, *tie-rra*.

**s** = *s* in 'set' (never sonant as in 'rose'):—*los*, *rosa*.

**x** = *x*. It formerly represented the Spanish *j*-sound. This is yet the case in a few names (e. g. México = *Méjico*, as sometimes written). Before *p*, *t*, *c*, it is often uttered, and even written, as *s*:—*extremo* or *estremo*; *extranjero* or *estranjero*.

**z** = Spanish *c* before *e*, *i* (always):—*zapatero*, *brazo*, *yaz-co*.

[12.] In Spanish America the following peculiarities prevail: *b* = *δ* (dialectally confused with *v*): *c* (+ *e, i*) and *z* = pure *s* (as often in Spain); and *ll* = *y* (as often in Spain).

---

EXERCISE II.

---

13. ORTHOGRAPHICAL CHANGES. The following orthographical variations are of importance:

*a.* In inflection and derivation, the orthographical device of denoting, in certain cases, the same sounds by different letters in different combinations (cf. 11) must be observed. Thus, we express

The *k*-sound by *c*, or by *qu* (+ *e, i*): *toco, toque.*

“ hard *g*-sound by *g*, or by *gu* (+ *e, i*): *pagó, pague.*

“ *gu*-sound (= *gōo*) by *gu*, or by *gü* (+ *e, i*): *menguó, mengüe.*

“ rasping *h*-sound by *j*, or by *g* (+ *e, i*): *cojó, coge.*

“ *th*-sound by *z* or by *c* (+ *e, i*): *cuezo, cuece; voz, voces.*

*b.* *h* is added before initial *ue*-: *oler, huelo.*

*c.* Diphthongal *i* is lost after *ll, ñ* (less often also after *ch, j*); and it changes to *y* between vowels or as initial before vowels:—*bullo* (3 pret. for *bull-ió*); *ceñó*; *hench(i)ó*; *leyó* (for *leió*); *yerro* (for *ierro*).

NOTE.—When there are two ways of expressing one sound in the same combination, usage varies: *mujer* or *muger*; *rey* or *rei*, etc.

14. PHONETIC CHANGES. Among many phonetic changes may be observed here:

*a.* Tonic *e* and *o* are often strengthened to *ie* (*ī*) and *ue* (*ū*):—*cierto* (root *cert*-); *tiene* (root *ten*-); *pido* (root *ped*-); *fuerte* (root *fort*-); *puedo* (root *pod*-); *pūdro* (root *podr*-).

*b.* Atonic *e, o* are at times weakened to *i, u* when not followed by tonic *i*:—*sintiendo* (root *sent*-); *durmiendo* (root *dor*-).

**15. ELISION.** In a sentence, final vowels or syllables are often omitted (elided) in writing, or only in utterance. Thus,

*a.* Eight determinative words in *-o*, (*bueno, malo; uno, primero, postrero, tercero; alguno, ninguno*) lose their final *o* before the word they determine: — *un buen médico* ‘a good doctor.’

*Una, alguna, ninguna* may also lose their final *a* before tonic *a-* or *ha-*: — *un águila* ‘an eagle.’

*b.* *Grande, santo, ciento* lose their final syllable before their noun (*grande* especially when the noun begins with a consonant, and *santo* before the name of a saint): — *un gran poeta* ‘a great poet’ (but rather *su grande amigo* ‘his great friend’); *cien hombres* ‘a hundred men’; *San Juan*.

*c.* Hiatus between words is often avoided by dropping, in utterance only, final vowels: *este otro* (= *est’ otro*); *desd(e) el cielo*.

**16. CAPITALS AND PUNCTUATION.** Here is to be observed:—

*a.* That proper adjectives (i. e., adjectives derived from proper nouns), names of days or months, and *yo* ‘I,’ do not usually begin with capitals:—*inglés* ‘English’ (but *Inglés* ‘Englishman’); *jueves* ‘Tuesday.’

*b.* That interrogation and exclamation points usually both introduce and end their sentence, being reversed, however, at the beginning:—*¿Quién es este hombre?* ‘Who is this man?’  
*¡Ay de mí!* ‘Alas for me!’



## II.

*Articles.*

[17. HISTORY. Latin had no articles. In Spanish the Latin demonstrative *ille* in its accusative forms—*illum, illam, illud*; pl. *illos, illas* (all save *ille* with proclitic tone-change)—, and the numeral *unum (unam)* came to be used as definite and indefinite articles respectively. The earlier form of *illum* was *ello* or (by proclisis) *lo*.]

## 18. DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	masc.	fem.	neut.
Sing.	<i>el</i> the	<i>la</i> (or <i>el</i> , note <i>a</i> )	<i>lo</i>
Plur.	<i>los</i>	<i>las</i>	—

*a. El for la.* By euphony *el* once always replaced the feminine *la* before a vowel or *h*. Now *el* is thus required only before *dissyllabic nouns* with initial *tonic a, ha* (though it may be used also before such polysyllabic nouns).— Thus: *el agua* (f.) ‘the water’; *el hambre* (f.) ‘the hunger’; *la* or *el ánima* ‘the soul’; *la abeja* (f.) ‘the bee’; *la alta* (adj.) *sierra* (f.) ‘the high sierra.’

*b. Lo* determines an adjective, adverb, or participle used as noun:— *lo bueno* ‘the good,’ *lo demás* ‘the rest’; but *el otro* ‘the other.’

19. CONTRACTION. *De* ‘of’ and *á* ‘to’ combine with *el* into *del* and *al* respectively:— *del padre* ‘of the father’; *al padre* ‘to the father.’

## 20. INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

	masc.	fem.
Sing.	<i>uno</i> (or <i>un</i> : cf. §15. <i>a</i> ) one, a	<i>una</i> (or <i>un</i> : cf. §15. <i>a</i> )
Plural	<i>unos</i> some	<i>unas</i>

## III.

*Nouns.*

[21. **HISTORY.** The six Latin case-forms were early in the singular reduced to two, one for the nominative and one for the oblique cases. Finally the latter (or one made in analogy with it) prevailed alone. In the plural the accusative form supplanted all the others. The Latin **accusative form**, as typifying the other oblique case-forms in the singular, and as surviving alone in the plural, may then be called the origin of the singular and plural noun-forms in Spanish: e. g., L. *amorem*, pl. *amores*: Sp. *amor*, *amores*. There are only some scattered remnants of other distinct case-forms (e. g., *dios* from the nom. *deus*; *jueves* from the genit. *jovis*, etc.). As Latin masculines and feminines (the only genders surviving in Spanish) ended in *-as*, *-os*, *-es* in the accusative plural, **-(e)s** became the regular plural sign in Spanish.

Latin neuters for the most part became masculines: L. *corpus* (n.): Sp. *cuerpo* (m.). Several plurals, however, by false analogy, were treated as singular feminines in *-a*: L. *folia*: Sp. *hoja*, f., 'leaf' (or collectively, 'leaves'); L. *vota*: Sp. *boda*, f., 'marriage, nuptials.' Even in other respects the regular relation between Latin and Spanish genders has been somewhat disturbed.]

22. **INFLECTION.** Spanish nouns, like English, distinguish between a *singular* and *plural* form. But they have no special case-form (not even, like English, a possessive).

*Plural Formation.*

23. **SIMPLE NOUNS.** Nouns ending in an atonic vowel (save *y*), or in *é*, add **s** to the singular; other nouns, **es**:

<i>el amigo</i> the friend	pl. <i>los amigos</i>
<i>la casa</i> the house	" <i>las casas</i>
<i>el pie</i> the foot	" <i>los pies</i>



<i>el rubí</i> the ruby	pl. <i>los rubíes</i>
<i>el rey</i> the king	“ <i>los reyes</i>
<i>la flor</i> the flower	“ <i>las flores</i>
<i>la nación</i> the nation	“ <i>las naciones</i>

NOTE.— Final *z* is written *c* before *-es* (§13 a):—*el juez* ‘the judge’; *los jueces*.

[24.] **EXCEPTIONS.** *a.* Nouns in atonic *-is*, *-es*, *-ez* (like *la crisis*, *el jueves*, *Sánchez*, etc.) and some pure Latin words (like *el déficit*, etc.) are unchanged in the plural.

*b.* Some nouns in *-á* and *-ó* (*padre*, *mamá*, *sofá*, *landó*, etc.) add *s*, not *es*, in the plural.

*c.* *Lord* and *milord* are in the plural *lores*, *milores*.

*d.* *Carácter* and *régimen* are in the plural, with the accent shifted forward, *caracteres*, *regímenes*.

**25. COMPOUND NOUNS.** If the first member of a compound is an adjective, both members take the plural sign: *gentilhombre* ‘gentleman’: *gentileshombres*. Otherwise only the last: *ferro-caril* ‘rail-road’: *ferro-carriles*. If the last member is already a plural, it remains unchanged: *cortaplumas* ‘pen-knife’ (lit. ‘cut-pens’): pl. the same.

Notice also *hi(jo)dalgo* ‘nobleman’: pl. *hijosdalgo* (only as noun) or *hidalgos*.

**26. Varied meaning in Singular and Plural.** Some nouns have in the plural, in addition to their usual sense, also a new meaning of kindred nature. Thus:

*a.* Masculine names of persons may in plural include both sexes:—*hijo* ‘son,’ pl. ‘sons, children’; *padre* ‘father,’ pl. ‘fathers, parents’; *hermano* ‘brother,’ pl. ‘brothers, brother(s) and sister(s)’; *rey* ‘king,’ pl. ‘kings, king and queen.’

*b.* A special meaning is added to the ordinary:—*día* ‘day,’ pl. ‘days, name-day’; *corte* ‘court,’ pl. ‘courts, legislative assembly’; *antejojo* ‘field-glass,’ pl. ‘field-glasses, spectacles’; etc.

---

EXERCISE IV.

---

**27. GENDER.** Spanish nouns are either *masculine* or *feminine*.

[28.] **Masculine** are:

*a.* Nouns denoting *male* beings:—*el hombre* ‘the man’; *el caballo* ‘the horse.’

*b.* Nouns not implying distinction of sex when they end in:

1. **-o, -ma** of Greek origin, or a **tone-vowel**:—*el libro* ‘the book’; *el oro* ‘the gold’; *el poema* ‘the poem’; *el idioma* ‘the language’; *el sofá* ‘the sofa’; *el pie* ‘the foot.’

Excepted: *la mano*, ‘the hand,’ *la nao* ‘the ship,’ *la fe* ‘the faith,’ *la tribu* ‘the tribe.’

2. **-r, -l, -j, -s**:—*el dolor* ‘the pain,’ *el sol* ‘the sun,’ *el árbol* ‘the tree,’ *el reloj* ‘the watch,’ *el mes* ‘the month,’ *el martes* ‘the Tuesday.’

Excepted: *la flor* ‘the flower,’ *la labor* ‘the labor,’ *la sal* ‘the salt,’ *la miel* ‘the honey,’ *la col* ‘the cabbage,’ *la lis* ‘the lily,’ *la tos* ‘the cough.’

[29.] **Feminines** are:

*a.* Nouns denoting *female* beings:—*la mujer* ‘the woman,’ *la vaca* ‘the cow.’

*b.* Nouns not implying distinctions of sex when they end in:

1. **-a** (save those in **-ma** from Greek), **-ie, -umbre**:—*la casa* ‘the house,’ *el* (18. *a*) *agua* ‘the water,’ *la série* ‘the series,’ *la servidumbre* ‘the servants’ (coll.).

Excepted: *el día* ‘the day,’ *el cometa* ‘the comet,’ *el planeta* ‘the planet,’ *el mapa* ‘the map.’

2. *-d, -ión*: — *la sed* ‘the thirst,’ *la verdad* ‘the truth,’ *la nación* ‘the nation.’

Excepted: *el ardid* ‘the artifice,’ *el ataúd* ‘the coffin.’

[30.] Nouns not determined by previous rules—i. e. chiefly nouns in *-e* (*-ie, -umbre* excepted), *-n, -z* — are either masculine or feminine.

NOTE 1.—Names of months and days; of trees, mountains and rivers; and of towns and countries not ending in *-a* are usually masculine. Those of fruits, and of rivers, towns and countries in *-a* are usually feminine.

NOTE 2.—No sufficiently short or practical rule for determining the gender of other nouns coming under this paragraph can be laid down. The classical student is helped in this respect by the general analogy between the Latin and Spanish gender (§21).

[31.] **Nouns of Two Genders.** Some nouns are masculine in ordinary use, while in poetic or archaic style they are feminine: — *el* or *la mar* ‘the sea’; *el* or *la puente* ‘the bridge,’ etc.

[32.] **Gender of Compounds.** Compound nouns have the gender of the last member if the first is an adjective: *el mediodía* ‘the mid-day.’ If it is not, they are masculine: *el paraguas* (*s* pl. sign) ‘the umbrella.’

**33. Homonyms of different Gender and Meaning.** Some cognate nouns of identical form are of different gender and meaning: —

*El cura* ‘the priest,’ *la cura* ‘the care’; *el ayuda* ‘the helper,’ *la ayuda* ‘the help’; *el guardia* ‘the sentinel,’ *la guardia* ‘the guard’; *el trompeta* ‘the trumpeter,’ *la trompeta* ‘the trumpet’; *el capital* ‘the capital (=money),’ *la capital*, the capital (city),’ etc.

**34. Formal Relation between Nouns of Opposite Sex.** Nouns denoting individuals of opposite sex are —

1. **Related** when the feminine form is derived from the masculine, either —

*a.* Like an adjective (40), by changing *-o, -e* into *-a* or adding *a* to a consonant ending: — *hermano* ‘brother’: *hermana* ‘sister’; *vecino* ‘neighbor (m.)’: *vecina* ‘neighbor (f.)’; *león* ‘lion’: *leona* ‘lioness’; *Alemán* ‘German (man)’: *Alemana* ‘German (woman).’

*b.* By suffixing in like manner *-ina*, *-esa*, *-isa*:—*gallo* ‘cock’: *gallina* ‘hen’; *héroe* ‘hero’: *heroína* ‘heroine’; *abad* ‘abbot’: *abadesa* ‘abbess’; *poeta* ‘poet’: *poetisa* ‘poetess.’

*c.* By changing *-tor*, *-dor* into *-triz* (Lat.—*trix*):—*actor* ‘actor’: *actriz* ‘actress’; *emperador* ‘emperor’: *emperatriz* ‘empress.’

2. **Unrelated** when not derived from the same noun:—*hombre* ‘man’: *mujer* ‘woman’; *caballo* ‘horse’: *yegua* ‘mare.’

3. **Identical**—*camarada* (m. or f.) ‘comrade’; *compatriota* (m. or f.) ‘countryman’; *joven* (m. or f.) ‘young man or woman.’

---

EXERCISE V.

---

**35. QUALIFYING SUFFIXES.** Spanish (like Italian) is peculiarly rich in somewhat freely used suffixes serving to modify the general sense of the noun, as especially to make it **augmentative** (in an ordinary sense, or in a depreciative sense, as implying coarseness etc.), or **diminutive** (implying smallness, nicety, weakness, worthlessness, etc.). These movable suffixes cannot, however, be used at random, and much familiarity with the language is required to handle them properly. As a rule, they occur less frequently in grave and serious language than in ordinary discourse and lighter composition.

The most important of these qualifying suffixes are given below. It is to be observed that in adding them to a noun, final atonic vowels are lost (*hombre*, *homb-r-ón*), and that consonants may change orthographically according to § 13.

1. **Augmentatives** (etc.) all containing the *tone-vowel* *o*, *a* or *u*, are: *-on* (augm.), *-ote* (augm. or deprec.), *-azo*, *-acho* (deprec.), *-ucho* (deprec.). All with a feminine in *-a*, according to § 40:—

<i>hombre</i> man	<i>hombron</i> big man
<i>mujer</i> woman	<i>mujerona</i> large woman
<i>hereje</i> heretic	<i>herejote</i> great heretic
<i>animal</i> animal	<i>animalucho</i> ugly beast

NOTE.— *-azo*, *-ada* often denote a blow or injury caused by the object named by its noun:— *látigo* ‘whip,’ *latigazo*, ‘large whip’ or ‘stroke with a whip’; *lanzada* (*lanza*) ‘lance-thrust,’ etc.

2. **Diminutives** (etc.), all containing the *tone-vowel i* or *e*, are: *-ico*, *-(e)cico*; *-ito*, *-(e)cito*; *-illo*, *-(e)cillo*; *-in(o)*; *-uelo*, *-(e)zuelo*; *-ete*, *-cete*; *-ejo*. All with a feminine in *a* (which supplies *o*, *e*):—

<i>hombre</i> man	<i>hombrecico</i> little man
<i>mujer</i> woman	<i>mujercita</i> little woman
<i>hermano</i> brother	<i>hermanito</i> little brother
<i>señora</i> lady	<i>señorita</i> young lady
<i>mano</i> (f.) hand	<i>manecita</i> pretty little hand
<i>autor</i> author	<i>autorçillo</i> poor author
<i>calle</i> street	<i>calleja</i> lane
<i>mozo</i> boy	<i>mocete</i> small boy

NOTE.— Diminutives containing an *l* or *e* are often depreciative in sense: *mujerzuela* ‘low woman’; *librejo* ‘worthless book.’

[36.] By repeated addition of augmentative and diminutive suffixes, yet other modifying suffixes are made. Such are: *-achon* (*acho*+*on*), *-achuelo* (*acho*+*uelo*); *-ejuelo* (*ejo*+*uelo*); *-etazo* (*ete*+*azo*), *-eton* (*ete*+*on*); *-illon* (*illo*+*on*); *-onazo*, etc.:—e. g., *mozo* ‘boy,’ *mocetón* ‘pretty tall lad’; *calle* ‘street,’ *callejuela* ‘narrow lane’: *pícaro* ‘rogue,’ *picaronazo* ‘piece of knavery.’

## IV.

*Adjectives.*

[**37. HISTORY.** The Latin adjectives have been treated in Spanish in the main like the nouns (§21). They have there only **one** distinct form for **each number**, and **two genders**. The masculine may be used as a neuter absolute with *lo*. Most adjectives (chiefly those in *-o*, *-on*, *-an*) form their feminine in *-a*; while the others, like many Latin adjectives, are alike in masculine and feminine.

The **degrees of comparison** are expressed by the aid of independent adverbs (*más* 'more,' *menos* 'less' = Lat. *magis*, *minus*.) A few Latin comparatives have survived in Spanish (e. g. L. *melior*, *pejor* = Sp. *mejor*, *peor*). The Latin superlative ending *-issimus* is in the form of *-ísimo* quite freely used in making absolute superlatives.]

---

**38. INFLECTION.** Spanish adjectives, unlike English, have a different form for the the **singular** and the **plural**, and often for the **masculine** and **feminine**. Like nouns, they have no special case-ending.

**39. PLURAL FORMATION.** Adjectives form their plural in a manner analogous with that of nouns (§23): — *bueno* (f. *buena*) 'good': pl. *buenos*, (*buenas*); *fácil* 'easy'; *fáciles*; *baladí* 'worthless': *baladíes*.

**40. FEMININE FORMATION.** Adjectives form their feminine in *-a*, or remain **unchanged**, according to the following rules:

a. All adjectives in *-o* and diminutives in *-ete*, *-ote* change their end-vowel into *-a*.: — *bueno*, f. *buena*; *grandote* 'biggish,' *grandota*.

b. Adjectives in *-an*, *-on*, *-or* (comparatives excepted), and



also **proper adjectives** (formed from proper names) not ending in *-a*, *-e*, *-i*, add *-a* in the feminine : — *burlón*, roguish, f. *burlona*; *traidor* ‘treacherous,’ *traidora*; *español* ‘Spanish,’ *española*; *francés* ‘French,’ *francesa*.

*c.* Other adjectives are **alike** in the masculine and feminine : — *grande*, m. or f., ‘great’; *joven*, m. or f., ‘young’; *mejor*, m. or f., ‘better’; *fácil*, m. or f., ‘easy’; *feliz*, m. or f., ‘happy’; etc.

**41. Apocopation.** About certain abbreviations of adjectives in sentences, cf. §15. *a.*

**42. COMPARISON.** Adjectives form their degrees of relative comparison in the following manner :

the **comparative** by placing the indeclinable *más* ‘more’ (or *menos* ‘less’) before the positive : — *blanco* ‘white,’ *más* (*menos*) *blanco* ‘whiter (less white)’;

the **superlative** by placing the definite article (which may be replaced by the atonic possessive) before the comparative : — *el* (or *mí*, etc.) *más blanco* ‘the (or my, etc.) whitest.’

[43.] *Irregular.* Certain adjectives more commonly use a synthetic comparative form (directly from Latin), taking *el* before it in the superlative, as usual. They are :

posit.	comp.	superl.
<i>bueno</i> ‘good’	{ <i>mejor</i> [ <i>más bueno</i> ]	<i>el mejor</i> <i>el más bueno</i> ] rare
<i>malo</i> ‘bad’	{ <i>peor</i> [ <i>más malo</i> ]	<i>el peor</i> <i>el más malo</i> ] rare
<i>grande</i> ‘great’	{ <i>mayor</i> <i>más grande</i>	<i>el mayor</i> <i>el más grande</i>
<i>pequeño</i> ‘small’	{ <i>menor</i> <i>más pequeño</i>	<i>el menor</i> <i>el más pequeño</i>
<i>alto</i> ‘high’	{ <i>superior</i> <i>más alto</i>	<i>el superior</i> <i>el más alto</i>
<i>bajo</i> ‘low’	{ <i>inferior</i> <i>más bajo</i>	<i>el inferior</i> <i>el más bajo</i>

NOTE.—*Mayor* and *menor*, applied to persons, also mean ‘older’ and ‘younger.’

**44. ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE.** Absolute superlatives (like ‘most true = very true’) are rather freely formed by adding the ending *-ísimo* to the positive. The positive then, besides losing its end-vowel and changing orthographically according to §13. *a*, reduces tonic *ie, ue*, to *e, o*:—*bueno, bonísimo* (rarely *óptimo*); *malo, malísimo* (rarely *pésimo*); *blanco, blanquísimo; útil, utilísimo*.

NOTE 1.—Adjectives in *-ro, -re*, usually add *-rimo* instead of *-ísimo* to the Latin stem in *-er*:—*misero* ‘wretched,’ *misérrimo*; *célebre* ‘famous’ *celebérrimo*.

NOTE 2.—The absolute superlative may also be expressed, as in English, by the aid of various adverbs (*muy, bastante, sumamente, hasta no más*, etc.).

NOTE 3.—Rarely a noun may also receive the absolute superlative suffix:—*señor, señorísimo* ‘very fine gentleman.’

**45. ‘THAN’** is expressed by *que*. *De*, however, is used for *que* before numerals in an affirmative clause; and *de lo que* before a personal verb.—Thus, *más alto que una casa* ‘higher than a house’; *más de diez casas* ‘more than ten houses’; *más alto de lo que parece* ‘higher than it seems.’

**46. QUALIFYING SUFFIXES.** The same augmentative and diminutive suffixes that may be attached to nouns (§35) are also used to modify the ordinary sense of adjectives:—*rico* ‘rich’: *ricacho* ‘very wealthy,’ *ricote* ‘rich and pretentious,’ *ric-ach-ón* ‘exceedingly rich’; *grande* ‘great’; *grandón* ‘bulky, heavy,’ *grand-ill-ón* ‘rather biggish’; *nuevo* ‘new,’ *nuevecito* ‘brand new’; *malo* ‘ill,’ *malico, malillo* ‘ailing,’ etc.



## V.

*Numerals.*

[47. HISTORY. The derivation of the Spanish numerals from the Latin is quite obvious throughout. *Primo*, being replaced by *primero*, is now used in sense of 'first, most excellent,' or (as noun) 'cousin.']

48. A list of the numerals, though properly belonging to the dictionary, is in accordance with general usage given below.

## I. Cardinals.

1 <i>uno</i> ( <i>un.</i> : §15)	11 <i>once</i>	21 <i>veinte y uno</i> <sup>1</sup>
2 <i>dos</i>	12 <i>doce</i>	22 <i>veinte y dos</i> , <sup>1</sup> etc.
3 <i>tres</i>	13 <i>trece</i>	30 <i>treinta</i>
4 <i>cuatro</i>	14 <i>catorce</i>	40 <i>cuarenta</i>
5 <i>cinco</i>	15 <i>quince</i>	50 <i>cincuenta</i>
6 <i>seis</i>	16 <i>diez y seis</i> <sup>1</sup>	60 <i>sesenta</i>
7 <i>siete</i>	17 <i>diez y siete</i> <sup>1</sup>	70 <i>setenta</i>
8 <i>ocho</i>	18 <i>diez y ocho</i> <sup>1</sup>	80 <i>ochenta</i>
9 <i>nueve</i>	19 <i>diez y nueve</i> <sup>1</sup>	90 <i>noventa</i>
10 <i>diez</i>	20 <i>veinte</i>	100 <i>ciento</i> ( <i>cien.</i> : 15. <i>b</i> )
100 <i>ciento</i> ( <i>y</i> ) <i>uno</i>	500 <i>quinientos</i>	1000 <i>mil</i>
102 <i>ciento</i> ( <i>y</i> ) <i>dos</i> , etc.	600 <i>seiscientos</i>	1001 <i>mil</i> ( <i>y</i> ) <i>uno</i> , etc.
200 <i>doscientos</i> <sup>2</sup>	700 <i>setecientos</i>	2000 <i>dos mil</i> , etc.
300 <i>trescientos</i> <sup>2</sup>	800 <i>ochocientos</i>	1,000,000 <i>millon</i>
400 <i>cuatrocientos</i>	900 <i>novecientos</i>	etc.

## II. Ordinals.

1 <i>primero</i>	4 <i>cuarto</i>	7 <i>séptimo</i>
2 <i>segundo</i>	5 <i>quinto</i>	8 <i>octavo</i>
3 <i>tercera</i>	6 <i>sexto</i> ( <i>sesto</i> )	9 <i>noveno</i> ( <i>nono</i> )

<sup>1</sup> *Diez y seis* may be written also *dieziseis*; and so likewise other combinations with *y* 'and' (*diezisiete*, etc.) up to 100.

<sup>2</sup> *Dos-* and *tres-* before *ciento* may be also *do-*, *tre-*. The ordinary units *tres*, *cuatro*, etc. are also used separately before *cientos*.

10 <i>décimo</i>	17 <i>décimo séptimo</i>	40 <i>cuadragésimo</i>
11 <i>undécimo</i>	18 <i>décimo octavo</i>	50 <i>quincuagésimo</i>
12 <i>duodécimo</i>	19 <i>décimo nono</i>	60 <i>sexagésimo</i>
13 <i>décimo tercio</i>	20 <i>vigésimo</i>	70 <i>setuagésimo</i> (or <i>sept-</i> )
14 <i>décimo cuarto</i>	21 <i>vigésimo primo</i>	80 <i>octogésimo</i>
15 <i>décimo quinto</i>	22 <i>vigésimo segundo</i> , etc.	90 <i>nonagésimo</i>
16 <i>décimo sexto</i>	30 <i>trigésimo</i> ( <i>-césimo</i> )	100 <i>centésimo</i>

**49. INFLECTION.** *Of cardinals uno* and multiples of *-ciento* (*doscientos*, m., *doscientas*, f., etc.) are treated as adjectives. *The ordinals* are all treated as adjectives.

NOTE.—*Mil*, *millón*, etc. are as pure nouns in pl. *miles*, *millones*, etc.

**50.** Tens of hundreds must be expressed by *mil*: — *mil y seis* ‘ten hundred and six.’

NOTE.—*Mil* is masculine: *doscientos* (m.) *mil pesetas* (f.) ‘200,000 pesetas (coin).’

**51.** ‘Half’ is *la mitad* as a noun (or in calculation, *un medio*), but *medio* as an adjective: — *la mitad de mis bienes* ‘one half of my goods’; *una hora y media* ‘an hour and a half.’

**52.** ‘Both’ is *ambos* (*-bas*), *los dos*; less often *entrambos*, *ambos á dos*: — *He visto á ambos*, or *á ambos á dos* ‘I have seen both (m.).’

---

EXERCISE VIII.

---

VI.

*Pronouns.*

[**53. HISTORY.** Most of the pronouns have been reduced, like nouns and adjectives, to **one** case-form. Excepted are the personals, which have **two** or (the third personal only) **three** distinct case-forms.

On the other hand, the personal and possessive pronouns have developed two distinct forms, according as, in ordinary use, they are **tonic** (having the tone-accent) or **atonic** (proclitic). Thus *mi* ‘me,’ *nosotros* ‘we,’ *mío* ‘mine,’ are tonic, but *me* ‘me,’ *nos* ‘we,’ *mi* ‘my,’ atonic.

Among less obvious derivations may be mentioned here: Sp. *yo*: L. *ego* (eo, ió); *ese*: *ipse*; *aquel*: *hac ille*; *quien*: *quem*; *alguien*: *aliquem*; *algo*: *aliquid*; *nadie*: *natus* (viz. *homo*); *nada*: *nata* (viz. *res*); *fulano* (Arab.); *zutano* (?); *cada*: *quot*; *sendos*: *singulos*; *alguno*: *alic-unus*; *ninguno*: *nec-unus*; *-quiera* (in *quien-cual-*), a Span. subjunctive 3d sing. 'may wish' (*quien-quiera* 'whom you please'); *mismo*: low Lat. *metipsimus*].

### Personals (reflexives inclusive).

54. The personals are either :

*a.* **tonic** when, as separated from the verb (by a preposition or other words) or emphatic, they have a tone-accent; or

*b.* **atonic** when, as used only in close connection with a verb, they ordinarily lose their tone-accent in its favor.

#### *a.* Tonic.

#### *b.* Atonic.

		<i>a.</i> Tonic.		<i>b.</i> Atonic.	
		Nominative.	With preposition.	Accusative.	Dative.
s.	1	<i>yo</i> I	<i>mi</i> me	<i>me</i> me, to me	
	2	<i>tú</i> thou	<i>tí</i> thee	<i>te</i> thee, to thee	
	3	<i>él</i> he	<i>él</i> him	<i>le</i> or <i>lo</i> him	<i>le</i> to him
	"	<i>ella</i> she	<i>ella</i> her	<i>la</i> her	<i>le</i> to her
	"	<i>ello</i> it (indef.)	<i>ello</i> it	<i>lo</i> it	<i>le</i> to it
	"		<i>sí</i> reflexive	<i>se</i> reflexive	
pl.	1	<i>nos(otros)</i> we	<i>nos(otros)</i> us	<i>nos</i> us, to us	
	2	<i>vos(otros)</i> you	<i>vos(otros)</i> you	<i>os</i> you, to you	
	3	<i>ellos</i> they <i>m.</i>	<i>ellos</i> them	<i>los</i> them	<i>les</i> to them
	"	<i>ellas</i> they <i>f.</i>	<i>ellas</i> them	<i>las</i> them	<i>les</i> to them
	"		<i>sí</i> reflexive	<i>se</i> reflexive	

NOTE 1.—The nominatives *yo, tu*, etc. may be used directly before a verb (as 'I' etc. in English), but as a rule only when emphatic. Cf. Syntax.

NOTE 2.—*Nos, vos* are now used for *nosotros, vosotros* only in solemn (authoritative or reverential) style. And cf. 56.

NOTE 3.—The accus. m. *le, lo* are used quite optionally (*le* preferably for persons). For the dat. f. *le, les* are also found (less good) *la, las*.

NOTE 4.—Note the accent-mark of *mí, tú*, to distinguish them from the possessives *mi, tu*; of *sí* as compared with *si* 'if'; and of *él* as compared with the definite article *el*.

**55.** *Con* (Lat. *cum*) 'with' contracts with *mi, ti, si* followed by the suffix *-go* (a remnant of Lat. *-cum* in *mecum*) into *conmigo, cortigo, consigo*: 'with me,' etc.

**56.** *Usted* (pl. *ustedes*)—a contraction of *vuestra merced* 'your grace'—is the customary form of address, like English 'you.' *Tu* and *vos* as sing. (pl. *vosotros*) denote intimacy or class superiority (*vos* also contempt; or 'you' in literary style).

*Usted*, by origin of the 3d person, is always so construed: *usted tiene* (3 sing.) 'you have' (lit. 'your grace has'). In writing it is usually abbreviated to *V.* (or *Vd.*, or *Vm.*), pl. *VV.* (or *Vds.*, *Vms.*). Qualifying words agree with its implied gender.

**57. POSITION OF THE ATONICS.** The atonics ordinarily (cf. 120) precede a tense-form, unless this is a positive imperative:—*Me oye* 'he hears me.' *Me lo da* 'he gives it to me.' *Te los he dado* 'I have given them to thee.'

But they are appended without hyphen to a positive imperative (or subjunctive used as such), and to infinitives and gerunds. These verb-forms then always retain their tone. Thus:—*óyeme* 'hear me.' *Vino á verme* (*verla*, etc.) 'he came to see me (her, etc.).' *Dándomelo* 'giving it to me.'

[58.] Of *two* atonic personals the dative precedes the accusative, whether before or after the verb. The reflexive *se*, however, always comes first.—*Me lo da* 'he gives it to me.' *Dámelo* 'give it to me!' *Os los ofrezco* 'I offer them to you.' *Se me olvida* (lit. 'it forgets itself to me') 'I forget.'

59. *Se for le, les.* — When two atonics both beginning with *l* come together, the first always changes to *se* (probably a corruption of the older *ge* = *le*, through *lle*): — *Se lo da* (for *Le lo da*) ‘He gives it to him’; *Se los presta á ellos* (for *Les los* etc.) ‘He lends them to them.’

## EXERCISE IX.

*Possessives.*

60. The possessives are either:

*a. tonic* when used *without* their noun (like English ‘mine’), or when placed *after* instead of before it (*padre mio* ‘my father’).

*b. atonic* when placed before their noun (*mi padre* ‘my father’).

*a. Tonic.**b. Atonic.*

( <i>el</i> ) <i>mio</i> mine, my	( <i>el</i> ) <i>tuyo</i> thine, thy	( <i>el</i> ) <i>suyo</i> his, her, its	<i>mi</i> my	<i>tu</i> thy	<i>su</i> his, her, its
( <i>el</i> ) <i>nuestro</i> our(s)	( <i>el</i> ) <i>vuestro</i> your(s)	( <i>el</i> ) <i>suyo</i> their(s)	<i>nuestro</i> our	<i>vuestro</i> your	<i>su</i> their

61. **INFLECTION.** The possessives are inflected like adjectives (all adding *s* in the plural, and those in *-o* changing *-o* to *-a* in the feminine), e. g.: — *mio*: f. *mia*, pl. *mios*, *mias*; *mi* (m. or f.): pl. *mis*; *tu*: *tus*; etc.

62. *El mio* etc. — When used without their noun (except usually after ‘be’), *el* is placed before *mio*, etc. (*el mio*, *la mia*; *los mios*, *las mias*): — *Su casa y la mia* ‘His house and mine.’

See further, Syntax.

63. 'Your, yours' is in ordinary polite address expressed by *su*, (*el*) *suyo*, or by *de usted*, *él de usted*:—*Su pluma* or *La pluma de V.* 'Your pen.' *Tengo la suya* (f.) or *Tengo la de V.* 'I have yours.' *Esta pluma es de V.* 'This pen is yours.'

About the use of *both* forms, cf. Syntax §123.

---

EXERCISE X.

---

**Demonstratives.**

64. The demonstratives, which are used with or without their noun (and may be accented according to § 5 f) are:

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Meaning.
sing.	<b>este</b>	<i>esta</i>	<i>esto</i>	this } near the speaker. these }
pl.	<i>estos</i>	<i>estas</i>	—	
sing.	<b>ese</b>	<i>esa</i>	<i>eso</i>	that } near the addressed. those }
pl.	<i>esos</i>	<i>esas</i>	—	
sing.	<b>aquel</b>	<i>aquella</i>	<i>aquello</i>	that } remote. those }
pl.	<i>aquellos</i>	<i>aquellas</i>	—	
sing.	<b>el</b>	<i>la</i>	<i>lo</i>	that } with possessive <i>de</i> , those } or with <i>que</i> .
pl.	<i>los</i>	<i>las</i>	—	

65. *El* combines with *á* and *de* into *al*, *del*.

66. *Este*, *ese* combine with *otro* into *estotro* (*-a* ; *-os*, *-as*), *esotro* (*-a* ; *-os*, *-as*).

---

EXERCISE XI.

---



*Interrogatives.*

67. The interrogatives (all having the accent-mark) are:

*quién*, pl. *quiénes* : who?

*qué* : what? what (a) ! [subst. or adj.]

*cuál*, pl. *cuáles* : which? what?

*cúyo* (f. *cúya*), pl. *cúyos* (f. *cúyas*) : whose?

*Relatives.*

68. The relatives (all without accent-mark) are:

*quien*, pl. *quienes* : who } of persons

*que*, pl. *que* : who, which, that (cf. note)

*el* (f. *la*) *cual*, pl. *los* (*las*) *cuales* : who, which

*cuyo* (f. *cuya*), pl. *cuyos* (f. *cuyas*) : whose, of which

} Of  
persons  
or  
things

NOTE. — *Que* after preposition very rarely refers to persons.

69. *Lo cual, lo que.* — *Lo cual* ‘which’ is a neuter referring to something said before: *dicho lo cual salió* ‘saying which he went out.’ *Lo que* means ‘that which, what’: *es lo que sé* ‘It’s what I know.’

---

 EXERCISE XII.
 

---

*Indefinites.*

70. The indefinites are:

a. Nouns:—*alguien* (invar.) ‘somebody,’ *algo* (invar.) ‘something’; — *nadie* (invar.) ‘anybody’; usually ‘nobody’ (with *no* before the verb, if *nadie* follows it); *nada* (invar.) ‘anything’; usually ‘nothing’ (like *nadie*); — *quienquiera(a)* (pl. *quienes-*

*quiera*) 'whoever, whichever, whatever';— *fulano* (f. *-a*), *zutano* (f. *-a*) 'so and so.'

*b. Adjectives*:— *cada* (invar.) 'every, each'; *cierto* (f. *-a*, pl. *-os, -as*) 'certain'; *sendos* (f. *-as*) 'each a,' agreeing with the following noun.

*c. Nouns or adjectives*:— *uno* (f. *-a*, pl. *-os, -as*) 'a,' pl. 'some'; *otro* (f. *-a*, pl. *-os, -as*) '(an)other';— *tal* (pl. *tales*) 'such'; *cual* (pl. *cuales*) 'as';— *alguno* (f. *-a*, pl. *-os, -as*) 'some one, some, any'; *ninguno* (f. *-a*, pl. *-os, -as*) 'no one, none, no' (with *no* before the verb when *ninguno* follows it);— *todo*, (f. *-a*, pl. *-os, -as*) 'whole, all, every';— *cualquier(a)* (pl. *cualesquiera*) 'any (you please)';— *mismo* (f. *-a*, pl. *-os, -as*) 'same, self, very.'

---

EXERCISE XIII.

---

VII.

*Verbs.*

[71. **HISTORY.** The following are the main relations between the Latin and the Spanish verb:

*a. Conjugations.* The four Latin conjugations are in Spanish reduced to three, viz.: 1. in *-ar* [Lat. *-are, -ĕre*]; 2. *-er* [Lat. *-ĕre, -ĕre* (Sp. *-ecer* = Lat. *-escĕre*), *-ire*]; 3. in *-ir* [Lat. *-ire, -ĕre, -ĕre*].

*b. Voices.* The Latin **passive** is replaced by a periphrastic passive, formed by the auxiliary *ser* or *estar* and the past participle of the verb used. **Deponent** verbs have assumed active endings.

*c. Tenses.* The Latin **future** is exchanged for a compound future-form, made by the infinitive + *he* (etc.) 'I have': e.g. *amaré* (= *amar* + *he*) 'I shall love.' So likewise a Spanish **conditional** is formed by the aid of *-ia*, an



abbreviation of *habia* 'had'; e. g. *amaría* (= *amar* + *ía*) 'I should love.' The other Latin tenses remain, though in part with altered function. With regard to their formation may be observed: Lat. *-abam, -iebam* (impf.) = Sp. *-aba, -ía*; Lat. *-assem* etc. (plup. subj.) = Sp. *-ase* etc. (impf. subj.); Lat. *a(ve)rim, etc.* (perf. subj.) = Sp. *-are* etc. (fut. subj.); Lat. *-a(ve)ram* etc. = Sp. *-ara* etc. (cond. subj.). A complete set of **periphrastic** ('compound') tenses with the auxiliary *haber* (rarely *tener*) have been developed in Spanish.

*d. Verbal Nouns.* The Latin **supine** is lost. So also the **participles** not ending in *-tus* (save a few non-verbal forms as *siguiente, durante; futuro, educando, expurgando, etc.*).

*e. Personal Endings.* Here is to be noticed especially the loss of final *-m* (e. g. L. *amem* : Sp. *ame*) and *-(i)t* (L. *amat* : Sp. *ama* ; L. *amavit* : Sp. *amó*); and of *-t* in *-tis* (L. *amatis* : Sp. *amáis*).

*f. Irregular Forms.* The irregularities of Spanish verbs are caused especially: — *a.* by a change of *e, o* when tonic into *ie* (*ī*), *ue* (*ū*), and when atonic into *i, u* : L. *dormio* ; Sp. *duermo* ; *dormiamos* : *durmamos* ; — *b.* by a change mostly of L. pres. *-io* (*-eo*), *-ia-* (*-ea-*) into *-go, -ga-* (in analogy with reg. *digo, L. dico*) : L. *venio* : Sp. *vengo* ; — *c.* by a change of the pret. root-vowel to *u* (through influence of final *-ui* : L. *habui* : Sp. *hube*), or *i* (in analogy with old *vide, L. vīdī*) : L. *veñi*, Sp. *vine* ; and of *x* to *j* : L. *dixi* : Sp. *dije* ; — *d.* by a contraction of the infinitive form in the fut. and cond., often with an attendant insertion of *d* : L. *sapere* : Sp. *sab'r-é* ; L. *tenere* : Sp. *ten'dr-é*.]

---

**72.** With regard to their general use, Spanish verbs, like English, are either **Transitive** or **Intransitive**. These may again in special uses be **Reflexive** or **Impersonal**.

**73.** The conjugation of a verb involves, as also in English, a distinction of **Voice, Mood, Tense, Number** and **Person**. For their formation and meaning the student is referred directly to the paradigms below.

**74. CONJUGATIONS.** Spanish verbs are divided into three conjugations, according to the ending of their infinitive, which is as follows :

1. **-ar**: e. g. *amar* 'love.'
2. **-er**: e. g. *temer* 'fear.'
3. **-ir**: e. g. *partir* 'part.'

**75. REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS.** These are distinguished as follows:

1. **Regular Verbs** are conjugated like one of the type-verbs of the three conjugations. Or they deviate from it (a) by **orthographical** peculiarities (simply resulting from the general mode of spelling); or (b) by certain **phonetical** variations affecting *regularly* the root in large groups of verbs.

2. **Irregular Verbs** deviate from the regular as described above.

NOTE. — Some grammars classify as irregular all verbs with regularly recurring phonetical changes. The question is purely one of practical convenience.

**76. PRINCIPAL PARTS.** The **present** (ind.), **infinitive**, **preterit** (ind.), **gerund**, and **participle** may serve as the *principal parts* of verbs, from which all other parts can be conveniently derived.

The method of derivation — serviceable especially in learning root-changing verbs (82 etc.) — is illustrated below by *amar* for the first, *temer* for the second, and *partir* for the third conjugation. Heavy type endings are those regularly added to the root (*am-*, *tem-*, *part-*), or, in future-conditional ind., to the whole infinitive.<sup>1</sup>

**Principal Parts:**

**Derived Parts:**

Pres.	{	<i>amo</i> <i>temo</i> <i>parto</i>	pres. subj.,	<i>ame</i> " " <i>tema</i> " " <i>parta</i>	imperat.	<i>ama</i> " <i>teme</i> " <i>parte</i>
-------	---	---	--------------	---	----------	---

<sup>1</sup> About the real formation of the fut. and cond. from the inf. + *é, ía* (for *hé, había* 'have, had'), cf. §71, c.

Principal Parts:      Derived Parts:

Infin.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{amar} \\ \textit{temer} \\ \textit{partir} \end{array} \right.$	imp. ind., <i>amaba</i>	fut. ind., <i>amaré</i>	cond. ind., <i>amaria</i>	
		“ <i>temía</i>	“ <i>temeré</i>	“ <i>temeria</i>	
		“ <i>partía</i>	“ <i>partiré</i>	“ <i>partiria</i>	
Preterit	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{amé} \\ \textit{temí} \\ \textit{partí} \end{array} \right.$	imp. subj., <i>amase</i>	fut. subj., <i>amare</i>	cond. subj., <i>amara</i>	
		“ <i>temiese</i>	“ <i>temiere</i>	“ <i>temiera</i>	
		“ <i>partiese</i>	“ <i>partiere</i>	“ <i>partiera</i>	
Gerund	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{amando} \\ \textit{temiendo} \\ \textit{partiendo} \end{array} \right.$	periphrastic progressive forms (90 C.).			
Partic.		$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{amado} \\ \textit{temido} \\ \textit{partido} \end{array} \right.$	periphrastic active and passive forms (90 A. B.).		

As seen above, the 2d and 3d conjugation form their derived tenses precisely alike.

NOTE. — In root-changing verbs the preterit derivatives are made from the 3d sing. of the preterit.

### 1. Regular Verbs.

77. As type-verbs for the conjugation of the regular verbs in their single tenses may serve, as above:

1. *amar*, love:                      2. *temer*, fear:                      3. *partir*, part:

#### *Present Group.*

##### PRESENT INDICATIVE.

S. 1	<i>am-o</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>tem-o</i>	<i>part-o</i>
	I love (do love)	I fear (do fear)	I part (do part)
2	<i>am-as</i>	<i>tem-es</i>	<i>part-es</i>
3	<i>am-a</i>	<i>tem-e</i>	<i>part-e</i>

<sup>1</sup> As a help to the beginner, the tone-vowel (cf. 4, 5) is here marked with heavy type, and the ending separated from the root by a hyphen.

pl. 1	<i>am-amos</i>	<i>tem-emos</i>	<i>part-imos</i>
2	<i>am-áis</i> ( <i>ái</i> diph.)	<i>tem-éis</i>	<i>part-ís</i>
3	<i>am-an</i>	<i>tem-en</i>	<i>part-en</i>

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

s. 1	<i>am-e</i>	<i>tem-a</i>	<i>part-a</i>
	I (may) love, etc. <sup>1</sup>	I (may) fear	I (may) part
2	<i>am-es</i>	<i>tem-as</i>	<i>part-as</i>
3	<i>am-e</i>	<i>tem-a</i>	<i>part-a</i>
pl. 1	<i>am-emos</i>	<i>tem-amos</i>	<i>part-amos</i>
2	<i>am-éis</i>	<i>tem-áis</i>	<i>part-áis</i>
3	<i>am-en</i>	<i>tem-an</i>	<i>part-an</i>

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE.

s. 2	<i>am-a</i> love !	<i>tem-e</i> fear !	<i>part-e</i> part !
pl. 2	<i>am-ad</i> (78)	<i>tem-ed</i>	<i>part-id</i>

*Infinitive Group.*

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

s. 1	<i>am-aba</i>	<i>tem-ía</i> (5. a)	<i>part-ía</i> (5. a)
	I loved (did love)	I feared (did fear)	I parted (did part)
2	<i>am-abas</i>	<i>tem-ías</i>	<i>part-ías</i>
3	<i>am-aba</i>	<i>tem-ía</i>	<i>part-ía</i>
pl. 1	<i>am-ábamos</i>	<i>tem-íamos</i>	<i>part-íamos</i>
2	<i>am-abais</i>	<i>tem-íais</i>	<i>part-íais</i>
3	<i>am-aban</i>	<i>tem-ían</i>	<i>part-ían</i>

## FUTURE INDICATIVE.

s. 1	<i>amar-é</i>	<i>temer-é</i>	<i>partir-é</i>
	I shall (will) love	I shall (will) fear	I shall (will) part
2	<i>amar-ás</i>	<i>temer-ás</i>	<i>partir-ás</i>
3	<i>amar-á</i>	<i>temer-á</i>	<i>partir-á</i>
pl. 1	<i>amar-emos</i>	<i>temer-emos</i>	<i>partir-emos</i>
2	<i>amar-éis</i>	<i>temer-éis</i>	<i>partir-éis</i>
3	<i>amar-án</i>	<i>temer-án</i>	<i>partir-án</i>

<sup>1</sup> Subjunctive variously rendered in English, according to the context.

## CONDITIONAL INDICATIVE

s. 1	<i>amar-ía</i> (5. a)	<i>temer-ía</i>	<i>partir-ía</i>
	I should (would) love	I should (would) fear	I should (would) part.
2	<i>amar-ías</i>	<i>temer-ías</i>	<i>partir-ías</i>
3	<i>amar-ía</i>	<i>temer-ía</i>	<i>partir-ía</i>
pl. 1	<i>amar-íamos</i>	<i>temer-íamos</i>	<i>partir-íamos</i>
2	<i>amar-íais</i>	<i>temer-íais</i>	<i>partir-íais</i>
3	<i>amar-ían</i>	<i>temer-ían</i>	<i>partir-ían</i>

*Preterit Group*

## PRÉTERIT INDICATIVE

s. 1	<i>am-é</i>	<i>tem-í</i>	<i>part-í</i>
	I loved	I feared	I parted
2	<i>am-aste</i>	<i>tem-iste</i>	<i>part-iste</i>
3	<i>am-ó</i>	<i>tem-ió</i>	<i>part-ió</i>
pl. 1	<i>am-amos</i>	<i>tem-imos</i>	<i>part-imos</i>
2	<i>am-asteis</i>	<i>tem-isteis</i>	<i>part-isteis</i>
3	<i>am-aron</i>	<i>tem-ieron</i>	<i>part-ieron</i>

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

s. 1	<i>am-ase</i>	<i>tem-ièse</i>	<i>part-ièse</i>
	I loved (could, should I.) <sup>1</sup>	I feared (etc.)	I parted (etc.)
2	<i>am-ases</i>	<i>tem-iêses</i>	<i>part-iêses</i>
3	<i>am-ase</i>	<i>tem-iêse</i>	<i>part-iêse</i>
pl. 1	<i>am-ásemos</i>	<i>tem-iêsemos</i>	<i>part-iêsemos</i>
2	<i>am-aseis</i>	<i>tem-iêseis</i>	<i>part-iêseis</i>
3	<i>am-asen</i>	<i>tem-iêsen</i>	<i>part-iêsen</i>

## FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE

s. 1	<i>am-are</i>	<i>tem-iêre</i>	<i>part-iêre</i>
	I should (would) love <sup>1</sup>	I should (etc.) fear	I should (etc.) part.
2	<i>am-ares</i>	<i>tem-iêres</i>	<i>part-iêres</i>
3	<i>am-are</i>	<i>tem-iêre</i>	<i>part-iêre</i>

<sup>1</sup> Subjunctive variously rendered in English, according to the context.

pl. 1	<i>amáremos</i>	<i>tem-iéremos</i>	<i>part-iéremos</i>
2	<i>am-areis</i>	<i>tem-iereis</i>	<i>part-iereis</i>
3	<i>am-aren</i>	<i>tem-ieren</i>	<i>part-ieren</i>

## CONDITIONAL SUBJUNCTIVE

S. 1	<i>am-ara</i>	<i>tem-iëra</i>	<i>part-iëra</i>
	I should (would, could) love <sup>1</sup>	I should (etc.) fear	I should (etc.) part
2	<i>am-aras</i>	<i>tem-iëras</i>	<i>part-iëras</i>
3	<i>am-ara</i>	<i>tem-iëra</i>	<i>part-iëra</i>
pl. 1	<i>am-áramos</i>	<i>tem-iéramos</i>	<i>part-iéramos</i>
2	<i>am-arais</i>	<i>tem-iërais</i>	<i>part-iërais</i>
3	<i>am-aran</i>	<i>tem-iëran</i>	<i>part-iëran</i>

## GERUND

<i>am-ando</i> , loving	<i>tem-iendo</i> , fearing	<i>part-iendo</i> , parting
-------------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------------

## PARTICIPLE

<i>am-ado</i> , loved	<i>tem-ido</i> , feared	<i>part-ido</i> , parted
-----------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------

NOTE.— Interrogative forms are made in the same way, the auxiliary 'do' being unexpressed: *¿le ama?* does he love her?

**78.** Final *-s* and *-d* (of 1 pl. pr. subj. and 2 pl. imperat.) are lost before the appended object-pronouns *nos*, *os*: e. g. *amémonos* (for *amemos-nos*) 'let us love each other'; *vámonos* (for *vamos-nos*) 'let us go'; *amaos* (for *amad-os*) 'love (ye) one another!'

Yet we say *idos* (= *id-os*) 'go (ye)!'

**79.** A few verbs have, besides their regular participle, also an earlier irregular (rare in compounds, common as adj.). Thus *prender* 'take': *prendido* or *preso*; *romper* 'break': *rompido* or *roto*; *injerir* (or *ingerir*) 'insert, graft': *injerido* or *injerto*; *oprimir* 'oppress': *oprimido* or *opreso*; *suprimir* 'suppress': *suprimido* or *supreso*.

**80. ORTHOGRAPHICAL CHANGES** In writing out the verb-forms the orthographical methods which serve to

<sup>1</sup> After conditional words etc., optionally with the impf. subj. (§ 154. d.).



denote their proper pronunciation must be carefully observed (cf. §13). Thus:

<i>tocar</i> 'touch':	pres. ind. <i>toco</i> etc.;	pres. subj. <i>toque</i> etc.
<i>pagar</i> 'pay':	" " <i>pago</i> etc.;	" " <i>pague</i> etc.
<i>coger</i> 'collect':	" " <i>cojo, coges</i> etc.	
<i>vencer</i> 'conquer':	" " <i>venzo, vences</i> etc.	
<i>oler</i> 'smell':	" " <i>huelo (ue, 82)</i> etc.	
<i>bullir</i> 'boil':	pret. ind. 3 sing. <i>bulló</i> (for <i>bull-id</i> ),	pret. subj. <i>bullese</i> (for <i>bull-iese</i> ) etc.
<i>ceñir</i> 'gird':	pret. ind. 3 sing. <i>ceñó</i> (for <i>ceñ-id</i> ) etc.	
<i>leer</i> 'read':	pret. 3 s. <i>le-yó</i> ;	<i>errar</i> 'err': pres. <i>yerro</i> (13 c.)

[81.] Verbs in *-cer* or *-cir* after vowel change *c* into *zc*, instead of *z* (§ 13 a.), before *a, o, i*, e. in pres. ind. 1 sing., and in pres. subj. throughout. — Ex. *nacer* 'be born':

pres. ind. <i>nazco, naces, nace</i> ;	<i>nacemos, nacéis, nacen</i>
" subj. <i>nazca nazcas, nazca</i> ;	<i>nazcamos, nazcáis, nazcan</i>
The rest regular, without change.	

NOTE 1. — Excepted are: *cocer* (§ 84), *empecer, mecer*, which regularly change *c* into *z + a, o*; while *hacer* with compounds change it into *g* (cf. §88).

[NOTE 2. — Most of the verbs that change *c* into *zc* come from Latin verbs with the inchoative *sc*; e. g. *nazco*: Lat. *nascor*; *conozco*: Lat. *cognosco*, etc.]

---

EXERCISES XIV., XV.

---

**82. STEM-VARYING VERB-CLASSES.** Three verb-classes change thematical (usually radical) *e, o* to *ie* (or *i*), *ue* (or *u*) when tonic; and two of them also partly to *i, u* when atonic. A fourth class changes radical *u* to *uy* before a vowel except *i*. Thus (naming each class by its key-verb):

**A. The First or *pensar*-Class.** — Thematic (usually radical) *e, o* become resp. *ie* (*ye-*, § 13), *ue* when tonic, i.e., in the singular and 3d plural of the three presents. — Ex.:



**pensar** 'think' (tonic root *piens-*, atonic *pens-*):

Pres. ind. *pienso, piensas, piensa*; *pensamos, pensáis, piensan*

“ subj. *piense, pienses, piense*; *pensemos, penséis, piensen*

“ imper. — *piensa* — — — *pensad* — —

All the rest regular, without root-change.

**sonar** 'sound' (tonic root *suen-*, atonic *son-*):

Pres. ind. *sueno, sueñas, suena*; *sonamos, sonáis, suenan*

etc., in perfect analogy with *pensar*.

Here belong about 350 *-ar*, *-er* verbs. The simple verb-forms, arranged in homotypal groups (and with a hyphen if not used alone), are:

I. **ar-VERBS.** 1. Radical *e, o*: *probar*; *noblar, poblar*; *quebrar*; *clocar, -flocar, trocar*; *rodar*; *-pedrar*; *cegar, fregar, negar, plegar, regar, sosegar, rogar* (comp's reg.); *helar, melar*; *colar, dolar, -molar, solar, -solar, volar*; *volcar*; *goldar, soldar* all in *-olgar*; *-collar, follar* ('blow'), *-gollar, hollar, -ollar, -sollar*; *sonar*; *sonar, tronar*; *-mendar, -render, -rengar, -longar*; *-censar, pensar* (*com-, re-* reg.); *-centar, mentar* (*co-, de-* reg.), *tentar* (*a-* 'plot,' *con-, de-, in-* reg.) *ventar, contar*; *-enzar, -tenzar*; *-tendrar*; *-contrar*; *soñar*; *-corar, -forar* (*a-* 'gauge,' reg.), *-gorar*; *erbar*; *-porcar*; *-cordar*; *-fermar, -pernar, -vernar*; *cerrar, errar, ferrar* (*a-* also reg.), *herrar, serrar, -terrar* (*a-* 'terrify,' reg.); *-certar, -pertar, -tortar*; *forzar, -almorzar*; *-fesar, -vesar, -grosar, -osar* (*osar* 'dare' reg.); *manifestar, -hestar, -testar* (*a-* 'testify,' reg.), *costar, -costar, -nostar, -postar* (*a-* 'post,' reg.), *tostar*; *-destrar, mostrar, pezar* (*des-, em-, tro-*).—2. Terminational *e, o*: *azolar, -majolar*; *hacendar, merendar*; *alentar, calentar, -carmentar, cimentar, -crescentar, -pacentar, -parentar, regimentar, salpimentar, -sangrentar, sarmentar, sementar*; *avergonzar*; *gobernar*.

II. **er-VERBS.** *cocer*; *heder, poder*; all in *-oler* and *-olver*; *-cender, fender, hender, -scender, tender* (*pre-* reg.). *torcer*; *perder, monder*; *cerner*; *verter*; all in *-over*.

NOTE 1.—Verbs in *-olver* form the participle in *-uelto* (*suelto, vuelto*).

NOTE 2.—Also *-cernir* belongs here. *Jugar* (Lat. *jocari*, but not *en-jugar*) and *ad-quirir* (from Sp. *querer*) follow this class, changing radical tonic *u, i* into *ue, ie*:—Pres. *juego*, etc.; *jugamos*, etc.—Pres. *adquiero*, etc.; *adquirimos*, etc.

**B. The Second or *sentir*-Class.** — Radical *e* becomes *ie* when tonic (cf. A.); and *i* when atonic, if the vowel of the next syllable is not *i*. Radical *o* becomes, analogously, *ue*, *ũ*. — Ex. :

*sentir* ‘feel’ (tonic root *siēnt-*, atonic *sent-*, *sint-*):

Pres. ind. *siento*, *sientes*, *siente*; *sentimos*, *sentís*, *sienten*

“ subj. *siēnta*, *siēntas*, *siēnta*; *sintamos*, *sintáis*, *sientan*

“ imper. — *siente* — — — *sentid* — — —

Pret. ind. *sentí*, *sentiste*, *sintió*; *sentimos*, *sentisteis*, *sintieron*

Impf. subj. *sintiese* }

Fut. “ *sintiere* } etc., *sint*- throughout

Cond. “ *sintiera* }

Ger. *sintiendo*

The Infinitive group and Participle regular, without root-change.

*dormir* ‘sleep’ (tonic root *duerm-*, atonic *dorm-*, *durm-*):

Pres. ind. *duermo*, *duermes*, *duerme*; *dormimos*, *dormís*, *duermen*

“ subj. *duerma*, *duermas*, *duerma*; *durmamos*, *durmáis*,  
*duerman*

Etc., in perfect analogy with *sentir*.

Here belong about 50 *-ir* verbs, viz. : all with radical *e* followed by *nt*, *r*, *rr*, *rt* (i.e. all not belonging to *C*, below); but only *morir* and *dormir* with radical *o*.

NOTE 1. — *Erguir* ‘erect’ is in the pres. *yergo* (§ 13, *c*), or according to *C*, *irgo*.

NOTE 2. — *Morir* ‘die’ has the participle *muerto*.

**C. The Third or *pedir*-Class.** — Radical *e* becomes *ī* when tonic, *ĩ* when atonic, as above (*B*). Radical *o* (only in *podrir*) becomes, analogously, *ū*, *ũ*. — Ex. :

*pedir* 'ask' (tonic root *pīd-<sup>1</sup>*, atonic *ped-*, *pīd-<sup>1</sup>*):

Pres. ind.	<i>pi</i> do, <i>pi</i> des, <i>pi</i> de; <i>ped</i> imos, <i>ped</i> is, <i>pi</i> den
“ subj.	<i>pi</i> da, <i>pi</i> das, <i>pi</i> da; <i>pi</i> damos, <i>pi</i> dáis, <i>pi</i> dan
“ imper.	— <i>pi</i> de — — — <i>ped</i> id — — —
Pret. ind.	<i>ped</i> í, <i>ped</i> iste, <i>pid</i> ió; <i>ped</i> imos, <i>ped</i> isteis <i>pid</i> ieron
Impf. subj.	<i>pid</i> iese
Fut. “	<i>pid</i> iere
Cond. “	<i>pid</i> iera
Ger.	<i>pid</i> iendo

All the rest regular, without root-change.

*Podrir* 'rot' conjugates in perfect analogy. *Pudro*, *-es*, *-e*; *podrimos*, *-is*, *pudren*: etc. There is also a verb *pudrir* with invariable root.

Here belong about 50 *ir*-verbs, viz.: all with radical *e* not belonging to *B* (*-cernir* excepted, A. 2); and also *podrir*.

**D. The Fourth or *huir*-Class.** — All verbs in *-uir* with *audible u* and in *-üir* change *u* into *uy* before other vowels than single *i*. It is to be remembered also that atonic *i* becomes *y* before vowel (§ 13, *c*). — Ex.:

*huir* 'flee' (root *huy-* or *hu-*):

Pres. ind.	<i>huy</i> -o, <i>huy</i> -es, <i>huy</i> -e; <i>hu</i> -imos, <i>hu</i> -is, <i>huy</i> -en
“ subj.	<i>huy</i> -a, <i>huy</i> -as, <i>huy</i> -a; <i>huy</i> -amos, <i>huy</i> -áis, <i>huy</i> -an
“ imper.	— <i>huy</i> -e — — — <i>hu</i> -id — — —
Impf. ind.	<i>hu</i> -ía, <i>hu</i> -ías, <i>hui</i> -a; <i>hu</i> -íamos, <i>hu</i> -íais, <i>hu</i> -ían
Fut. “	<i>huir</i> -é
Cond. “	<i>huir</i> -ía
	} etc. without root-change
Pret. ind.	<i>hu</i> -í, <i>hu</i> -iste, <i>huy</i> -ó; <i>hu</i> -ímos, <i>hu</i> -isteis, <i>hu</i> -yeron
Impf. subj.	<i>hu</i> -yese
Fut. “	<i>hu</i> -yere
Cond. “	<i>hu</i> -yera
	} etc., terminational <i>i</i> = <i>y</i> throughout
Ger.	<i>hu</i> -yendo. Partic. <i>hu</i> -ido

So also *argüir* 'argue,' whose diæresis is dropped, except before tonic *i*: — Pres. ind. *arguy-o*, etc. Impf. ind. *argü-ia*, etc.

---

EXERCISE XVI.

---

2. *Irregular Verbs.*

85. Twenty-nine verbs which cannot be arranged into groups with identical variations throughout, are described below as **irregular**.

86. Waiving some less common variations, which are best learned with the paradigms, the **more general irregularities** — occurring singly or together — may be briefly summed up as follows:

1. **Present** (ind. and subj.):

*a.* The root is extended by **g** or **ig** before terminational *o*, *a*, (cf. § 71. *f*): e. g., *tener*: *teng-o*; *ca-er*: *caig-o*.

Here belong: (+**g**) *poner*, *tener*, *valer*, *yacer*, *hacer* (*hag-o*); *asir*, *salir*, *venir*, *decir* (*dig-o*); (+**ig**): *caer*, *traer*; *oir*.

*b.* The ending 1 sing. is extended by **-y**: e. g. *s-er*; *s-oy*.

Here belong: *dar*, *estar*, *ser*, *ir* (*voy*).

2. **Imperative**: Final vowel is lost: *tener*: **ten**.

Here belong: *hacer*, *poner*, *tener*, *yacer*; *salir*, *venir*, *decir* (*dí*).

3. **Future and Conditional Ind.** (always formed analogously): the vowel of the penult is lost, and in some cases also *d* inserted; e. g. *saber*: *sab'r-é*, *-ia*; *tener*: *ten'dr-é*, *-ia*.

Here belong (**loss**): *caber*, *poder*, *querer*, *saber*; *hacer* (*haré*), *decir* (*diré*); (+**d**): *poner*, *tener*, *valer*; *salir*, *venir*.

4. **Preterit**: radical *a*, *o*, *e*, become **u** or **i**, — often with some attendant consonant-change (cf. § 71. *f*), and 1 and 3 sing. end in **atonic -e, -o**: e. g. *hab-er*: *hub-e* (3 *hub-o*, both with tonic *u*); *dec-ir*: *dij-e* (3 *dij-o*).

Here belong (with *u*): *andar* (*anduve*), *caber* (*cupe*), *placer* (*plugo*), *poder* (*pude*), *poner* (*puse*), *saber* (*supe*), *tener* (*tuve*); (with *i*): *hacer*, (*hice*), *querer* (*quise*); *decir* (*dije*), *venir* (*vine*).—add: *traer* (*traje*, § 71 *f*), *-ducir* (*-duje*).

5. **Participle**: irreg. of *abrir*, *cubrir*, *decir*, *escribir*, *imprimir*, *hacer*, *poner*, *ver*.

**87. STUDY** the irregular verbs as grouped, according to common irregularities, below (referring for each verb to the merely alphabetical list, § 88). Compound verbs follow the simple, unless otherwise stated:

1. **Pres. with (*i*)g**: — *caer*, *yacer*; *asir*, *oir*; — (+ contract. *Fut.*) *valer*, *salir*; — (+ irreg. *Pret.*) *traer*; — (+ contract. *Fut.* and irreg. *Pret.*) *poner*; *tener*, *venir*; *hacer*, *decir*.

---

EXERCISE XVII.

---

2. **Pres. in -y**: — (+ irreg. *Pret.*) *dar*, *estar*; — (tenses of different origin) *ser*, *ir*.

3. **Pres. otherwise irreg.**: — (+ *Part.*) *ver*; — (+ contract. *Fut.* and irreg. *Pret.*): *poder*; *querer*; *haber*, *saber*; *caber*.

4. **Pret. (alone) irreg.**: *andar*, *-ducir*.

5. **Partic. (alone) irreg.**: *abrir*, *cubrir*, *escribir*, *imprimir*.

---

EXERCISE XVIII.

---

**88. REFERENCE-LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS** (forms not given, perfectly regular): —

*Abrir* 'open': Part. *abierto*.

*Andar* 'go': Pret. *anduve*, *anduviste*, *anduvo*, etc. (*anduv-* through the pret. group).

*Andar* 'go' (without implied purpose) 'walk'; *ir* 'go' (with implied aim or purpose): e. g. *andar despacio* 'walk slowly'; *ir al teatro* 'go to the theatre.'

**Asir** 'grasp': Pres. ind. *asgo, ases* (etc. reg.); subj. *asga* (*asg-* throughout).

**Caber** 'hold': Pres. ind. *quepo, cabes* (etc. reg.); subj. *quepa* (*quep-* throughout). — Fut. ind. *cabré*. — Pret. *cupe, cupiste, cupo*, etc. (*cup-* through the pret. group).

**Caer** 'fall': Pres. ind. *caigo, caes* (etc. reg.); subj. *caiga* (*caig-* throughout). — Ger. *cayendo* (= *ca-iendo*, reg. § 13 c).

**Cubrir**: Part. *cubierto*.

**Dar** 'give': Pres. ind. *doy, das* (etc. reg.); subj. *dé* (etc. reg., except the accent-mark, used in 1 and 3 sing. in distinction from *de* 'of'). — *dí, diste, dió; dimos*, etc. 3d conj.

[Pret. *dí* abbreviation of Lat. *dedi*.]

**Decir** 'say': Pres. ind. *digo, dices, dice; decimos, decís, dicen*; subj. *diga* (*dig-* throughout); imperat. *dí* (or *dice*), *decid*. — Fut. ind. *diré*. — Pret. *dije, dijiste, dijo; dijimos*, etc. (*dij-* through the pret. group, observing *dije-* for *dijie* 13 c). — Ger. *diciendo*. — Part. *dicho*.

Compounds usually have the full imperat. *-dice*. *Bendecir, maldecir* have regular fut.-cond. ind., and partic. (the participial forms *bendito, maldito* being hardly used except as adjectives).

**-ducir** (only in compounds) 'lead': Pres. ind. *-duzco*, (81), *-duces*, etc. reg.; subj. *-duzca* or (rarely) *-duzga* etc. — Pret. *-duje, -dujiste, -dujo*, etc. (*duj-* through the pret. group, observing *duje-* for *dujie*: 13 c).

**Escribir** 'write,' Part. *escrito*. So *circum-*, *in-*, *pre-* (optionally), *pro-* *scribir*. Other compounds reg.

**Estar** 'be (transitorily)': Pres. ind. *estoy, estás, está; estamos, estáis, están*; subj. *esté, estés, esté; estemos, estéis, estén*; imperat. *está, estad*. — Pret. *estuve, estuviste, estuvo; estuvimos* etc. (*estuv-* throughout the pret. group).

[**Estar** from Lat. *stare* 'stand' with prothetic, always toneless, e.]



**Haber** 'have': Pres. ind. *he, has, ha* (*hay*: cf. note); *hemos, habéis, han*; subj. *haya* (*hay-* throughout); imperat. *he* (or *habe*), *haced*. — Fut. ind. *habré*. — Pret. *hube, hubiste, hubo; hubimos*, etc. (*hub-* through the pret. group).

NOTE.—The 3d sing. of *haber* is used impersonally in sense of 'there is (are)' etc. But in the pres. ind. it is then *hay* (*y* from Lat. *ibi* 'there': cf. French *il y a*): e. g. *Hay muchos que dicen* 'There are many who say.' *No hay que dudarlo* 'There is no doubting it.' *Mañana habrá combate* 'To-morrow there will be a fight.'

**Hacer** (Lat. *facere*) 'make, do': Pres. ind. *hago, haces* (etc. reg.); subj. *haga* (*hag-* throughout); imperat. *haz, haced*. — Fut. ind. *haré*. — Pret. *hice hiciste, hizo*, etc. (*hic-* through the pret. group). — Part. *hecho*.

So also compounds and *satis-facer* (with *f* for *h* throughout). Yet they often show a regular imperat. (*-hace, -face*), *-facer* even (rarely) regular pret. forms.

**Imprimir**: Part. *impreso*.

**Ir** 'go' (with an aim: cf. *andar*): Pres. ind. *voy, vas, va; vamos, vais; van*; subj. *vaya, vayas, vaya; vayamos* (in imperat. use, *vamos*), *vayáis, vayan*; imperat. *ve, id*. — Impf. ind. *iba, ibas, iba; íbamos, ibais, iban*. — Pret. *fui* etc. borrowed from *ser* 'be' (which see); (*fu-* through the pret. group). — Ger. *yendo* (reg.: 13 c). — Part. *ido*.

The forms of *ir* are from three Latin verbs: *ire, vadere, fui*. — Compounds are regular (observing for *circuir* 83. d). Only *preter-ir* forms the infinit. group like *ir*, lacking other tenses.

**Oír** 'hear': pres. ind. *oigo, oy-es, oy-e; o-imos, o-is, oy-en*; subj. *oiga* (*oig-* throughout). Rest reg. (observing atonic *i* = *y* between vowels: § 13 c). Impf. *oía* etc.

**Placer** 'please' (impers., except in fut.-cond. ind.): Pres. ind. (3d sing.) *place*; subj. *plega* or *plegue* (rarely *plazga*). — Pret. *plugo* (*plug-* through the group).



*Com-, de-placer* conjugate like *uacer*.

**Poder** 'be able': Pres. group according to 84 A (but imperat. not in use). — Fut. ind. *podré*. — Pret. *pu<sup>d</sup>e*, *pu<sup>d</sup>iste*, *pu<sup>d</sup>o*, etc. (*pu<sup>d</sup>-* through the pret. group). — Ger. *pu<sup>d</sup>iendo*.

**Poner** 'put': Pres. ind. *pongo*, *pones* (etc. reg.); subj. *ponga* (*pong-* throughout); imperat. *pon*, *poned*. — Fut. *pondré*. — Pret. *pu<sup>s</sup>e*, *pu<sup>s</sup>iste*, *pu<sup>s</sup>o*, etc. (*pu<sup>s</sup>-* through the pret. group). — Part. *pu<sup>s</sup>to*.

**Querer** 'wish, like': Pres. group according to 84 A. — Fut. *querré*. — Pret. *quisé*, *quisiste*, *quiso*, etc. (*quis-* through the pret. group).

**Saber** 'know': Pres. ind. *sé*, *sabes* (etc. reg.); subj. *sepa* (*sep-* throughout). — Fut. *sabré*. — Pret. *su<sup>p</sup>e*, *su<sup>p</sup>iste*, *su<sup>p</sup>o*, etc. (*su<sup>p</sup>-* through the pret. group).

**Ser** 'be (permanently)': Pres. ind. *soy*, *eres*, *es*; *somos*, *sois*, *son*; subj. *sea* (*se-* throughout: cf. note); imperat. *sé* (acc.-mark to distinguish from the pron. *se*), *sed*. — Impf. ind. *era*, *eras*, *era*; *éramos*, *erais*, *eran* (tone on *e*). — Pret. *fu<sup>i</sup>*, *fu<sup>i</sup>ste*, *fu<sup>e</sup>*, *fuimos*, *fu<sup>i</sup>steis*, *fu<sup>e</sup>ron*; impf. subj. *fuese*; fut. subj. *fuere*; cond. subj. *fuera*.

*Ser* is from Lat. *sedēre* (old Sp. *seer*: hence the subj. *se-a*, *se-as*, etc.). But its present ind. and pret. group are from *sum*, *fui*.

**Salir** 'go out': Pres. ind. *salgo*, *sales* (etc. reg.); subj. *salga* (*salg-* throughout); imperat. *sal*, *salid*. — Fut. *saldré*.

**Tener** 'hold, have': Pres. ind. *tengo*, *tienes*, *tiene*; *tenemos*, *tenéis*, *tienen*; subj. *tenga* (*teng-* throughout); imperat. *ten*, *tened*. — Fut. ind. *tendré*. — Pret. *tu<sup>v</sup>e*, *tu<sup>v</sup>iste*, *tu<sup>v</sup>o*, etc. (*tu<sup>v</sup>-* through the pret. group).

**Traer** 'bring': Pres. ind. *traigo*, *traes* (etc. reg.); subj. *traiga* (*traig-* throughout). — Pret. *traje*, *trajiste*, *trajo*, etc. (*traj-*

through the pret. group, observing *traje-* for *trajie*: 13. *c*). — Ger. *trayendo* (reg., 13. *c*).

**Valer** 'be worth': Pres. ind. *valgo, vales* (etc. reg.); *valga* (*valg-* throughout); imperat. *val(e), valed*. — Fut. ind. *valdré*.

Older pres. subj. *vala*, yet in *válame Dios* 'God help me.' The imperat. *vale* 'farewell,' obsolete.

**Venir** 'come': Pres. ind. *vengo, vienes, viene; venimos, venis, vienen*; subj. *venga* (*veng-* throughout); imperat. *ven, venid*. — Fut. ind. *vendrá*. — Pret. *vine, viniste, vino*, etc. (*vin-* through the pret. group; but the pret. has also the optional form *veniste; venimos, venisteis*). — Ger. *viniendo*.

**Ver** 'see': Pres. ind. *ve-o, v-es*, etc., *v-*; subj. *vea* (*ve-* throughout); imperat. *ve, ved*. — Impf. ind. *veía*, etc. (rarely *vía*). — Part. *visto*. — *V-er*, then, extends *v-* to *ve-*, except before *e*.

Lat. *videre*, old Sp. *veer* (hence *ve-* for *v-*, except before *e*). *Veer* yet in *proveer, desproveer*, which are regular.

**Yacer** 'lie': Pres. ind. *yazgo* or *yago, yaces* (etc. reg.); subj. *yazga* or *yaga* (*yazg-* or *yag-* throughout); imperat. *yaz* (or *yace*), *yaced*.

## 89. DEFECTIVE VERBS. Such are:

a. *Impersonals* (or used only in the 3d persons): *acaecer, acontecer, basta, concierne, importa, place* (88), *alborea, amanecer, diluvia, escarcha, graniza, hielá (deshielá), llueve, llovizna, mollizna, nieva, obscurecer, relampaguea, truená, ventea, ventisca*.

NOTE. — With impersonals denoting an operation of nature 'it' is never expressed. Otherwise *ello* may be used by emphasis: — *truená* 'it thunders'; (*ello*) *importe* 'it is important.'

b. *Verbs* in *-ir* having only such forms whose personal ending begins with *i*, and the fut.: *abolir, aguerrir, arrecir, aterir, desmarrir, desparvorir, embair, empedernir, garantir, manir*.

c. *roer* 'gnaw' has Pres. ind. *roo* (*roigo, royo*), *roes, roe*, etc; subj. *roa* (*roiga, roya*) etc.

d. *soler* 'be accustomed' has: Pres. ind. *suelo, sueles, suele*; *solemos, soleis, suelen*; Impf. ind. *solía* etc.

---

EXERCISE XIX.

---

**90. PERIPHRASTIC VERB-PHRASES.** Spanish, like English, makes a set of periphrastic **active**, **passive**, and **progressive** verb-phrases by the aid of auxiliaries. Spanish, however, uses more verbs as auxiliaries than English. Thus:

*A. Periphrastic Active-Phrases* are made by placing the required forms of *haber* (88) 'have' or *tener* (88) 'hold, have' before the **participle** of the main verb, invariable after *haber*, but agreeing with the object after *tener*. While *haber* is the ordinary auxiliary, *tener* may be used to express the verb-act as denoting possession or present condition: *le ha amado* 'he has loved her'; *tiene escrita la carta* 'he has (now) written the letter.' — Ex.:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

s.	1 <i>he amado</i> I have loved	s. 1 <i>tengo escrito</i> (-a, -os, -as) I have (now) written
	2 <i>has amado</i>	2 <i> tienes escrito</i> (-a, -os, -as)
	3 <i>ha</i> “	3 <i>tiene</i> “
pl.	1 <i>hemos</i> “	1 <i>tenemos</i> “
	2 <i>habéis</i> “	2 <i>tenéis</i> “
	3 <i>han</i> “	3 <i>tienen</i> “

and so on (conjugate through)

*B. Passive-Phrases* are made in like way by the aid of *ser* (88) 'be,' or *estar* (88) 'be' (less often *quedar*, reg., 'stay, be') and the **participle** of the main verb, which agrees with the subject. *Ser* denotes permanence of condition; *estar* (as *quedar*)

accidental or transitory condition: *es amado* 'he is loved'; *está agitada* 'she is agitated'; *quedan satisfechos* 'they are satisfied.'

— Ex. :

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

s.			s.			s.		
1	<i>soy amado</i> (-a)	I am loved	<i>estoy llegado</i> (-a)	I am arrived	<i>quedo satisfecho</i> (-a)	I am satisfied		
2	<i>eres amado</i> (-a)		<i>estás llegado</i> (-a)		<i>quedas satisfecho</i> (-a)			
3	<i>es</i> " "		<i>está</i> " "		<i>queda</i> " "			
pl.			pl.			pl.		
1	<i>somos amados</i> (-as)		<i>estamos llegados</i> (-as)		<i>quedamos satisfechos</i> (-as)			
2	<i>sois</i> " "		<i>estáis</i> " "		<i>quedáis</i> " "			
3	<i>son</i> " "		<i>están</i> " "		<i>quedan</i> " "			

and so on (conjugate through)

NOTE.— The passive is in Spanish very often exchanged for the reflexive: cf. 130, Syntax.

C. **Progressive Phrases** (= 'I am loving' etc.) are made in like way by the aid of *estar* 'be' (or *quedar* 'stay, be,' *ir* 'go,' *andar* 'go,' and some other less common verbs) and the invariable gerund of the main verb. — Ex. *estoy* (or *voy* etc.) *hablando* 'I am speaking'; and so on.

**91. REFLEXIVE (or RECIPROCAL) VERBS.** The conjugation of reflexive verbs is as in English, observing that the reflexive pronouns (*me, te, se; nos, os, se*) precede or follow the verb according to § 57. — Inf. *alabarse* 'praise one's self': Pres. ind. *me alabo, te alabas, se alaba*, etc.; periphrast. *me he alabado* etc.

NOTE I.— Some verbs are exclusively reflexive (*quejarse* 'complain,' *arrepentirse* 'repent,' etc.). Intransitives often change meaning as reflexive (*dormir* 'sleep': *dormirse* 'go to sleep'; *morir* 'die': *morirse* 'be dying,'

etc.). Many verbs that are reflexive in Spanish are not reflexive in English (*alegrarse* 'rejoice,' *arrepentirse* 'repent,' *disgustarse* 'be displeased,' etc.); and the reflexive construction often replaces the passive (cf. 137, Syntax).

NOTE 2.—The reflexive pronouns are in plural also used as reciprocals: *Nos alabamos* 'We praise (us *or*) each other.' In this use they may be strengthened by *el uno al otro*.

[92.] Neuter reflexives with *se* and personal dative (*me* etc.) are often used: e. g. *se me* (*te, le, nos* etc.) *figura* lit. 'it figures itself to me (thee, him, us etc.)' i. e. 'I (thou, he, we etc.) imagine'; *se le aborrece* 'he is abhorred'; *se me dice* 'I am told'; *se le trató* 'he was treated'; (*d el*) *se le mató* 'he was killed'; *colocóselé* 'it was placed.'

---

EXERCISES XVIII., XIX.

---

VIII.

*Indeclinables.*

[93. HISTORY.—Many Latin indeclinables have survived in Spanish (e. g. L. *bene*: Sp. *bien*; *male*: *mal*; *cum*: *con*; *trans*: *tras*). Many others were lost. New formations were made by the use of neuter adjectives (*alto, temprano*), nominal case-forms (L. *facie*: Sp. *hacia*), phrases (*á menudo, de prisa, al través de*), and compounds (L. *hac hora*: Sp. *ahora*; Sp. *d caso* = *acaso*). The formation of compound adverbs by the suffix *-mente* (by origin the ablative of *mens* in sense of 'manner') has come to be about as common in Spanish as the formation of adverbs in *-ly* in English (*severamente* = L. *severa mente*). Some adverbs end in a late, paragogic *-s*, originally identical with the plural sign of nouns (*antes*: L. *ante*; *entonces*: L. *extunc*; *quizás* or *quizá*: L. *quis sapit?*).

---

*Adverbs.*

94. Adverbs are either: *a.* Single like *bien* 'well,' *mal* 'badly,' *luego* 'presently,' *acaso* 'perchance,' *alto* 'aloud,' *temprano* 'early'; or *b.* Adverbial phrases like *á menudo* 'often,' *de prisa* 'in haste,' *de golpe* 'suddenly,' *á la ligera* 'superficially.'



[95.] Among common (but more or less idiomatic) adverbial phrases may be noted: *á ciegas* 'blindly,' *d escape* 'in haste,' *d gatas* 'on all fours,' *d menudo* 'often,' *d secas* 'blindly,' *d una* 'together'; — *con todo* 'notwithstanding,' *con ligereza* 'superficially'; — *de día* 'by day,' *de golpe* 'suddenly,' *de hecho* 'in fact, truly,' *de molde* 'perfectly,' *de prisa* 'in haste,' *de pronto* 'quickly,' *de rodillas* 'on one's knees'; — *en fin* 'finally,' *en seguida* 'at once,' *en cueros* 'naked'; — *por alto* 'over,' *por cierto* 'certainly,' *por supuesto* 'of course'; — *á la clara* 'manifestly,' *d la ligera* 'superficially,' *al contado* 'in cash,' *al punto* 'immediately'; — *en el acto* 'instantly,' *en lo sucesivo* 'henceforward'; — *por lo más* 'at most,' *por lo menos* 'at least.'

96. **Comparison.** — Adverbs are compared like adjectives; but comparatives usually serve also as superlatives. Irregular are:

POSIT.	COMPAR.	SUPERL. (absol.)
<i>mucho</i> much:	<i>más</i>	(lo) <i>más</i> or <i>muchísimo</i>
<i>poco</i> little:	<i>menos</i>	" <i>menos</i> or <i>poquísimo</i>
<i>bien</i> well:	{ <i>mejor</i> [ <i>más bien</i> 'rather']	" <i>mejor</i>
<i>mal</i> badly:	{ <i>peor</i> [ <i>más mal</i> ]	" <i>peor</i> or <i>malísimo</i> " <i>más mal</i> ]

97. **Adverbs in -mente,** denoting manner, may be formed from most adjectives by adding that suffix to their feminine form: *severo* 'severe': *severamente* 'severely'; *fácil* 'easy': *fácilmente* 'easily'; *reciente* 'recent': *recientemente* 'recently.'

NOTE. — If two or more modal adverbs follow each other, *-mente* is omitted in the first: *interior y exteriormente* 'internally and externally'; *severa pero justamente* 'severely but justly.'

98. **Adjectives as Adverbs.** — Many adjectives are in Spanish (as some in English) used directly as adverbs. Such are: *alto* 'aloud,' *bajo* 'low,' *barato* 'cheap,' *caro* 'dear(ly),' *falso* 'false, out of tune,' *mucho* 'much, very,' *poco* 'little,' *pronto* 'soon,' *solo* 'only': etc.

NOTE. — Some of these adjectives also form adverbs in *-mente*, at times with changed meaning: *bajo* 'low, quietly': *bajamente* 'in a low or simple manner.'

**99. Negation.** — *No* means either 'no' or 'not': *No, Señor, no lo creo* 'No, Sir, I do not believe it.' The construction of the ordinary negatives with verbs is as follows:

*no* (before the *pers.* verb) 'not': e. g. *no tengo* 'I have not';  
*no he tenido* 'I have not had.'

*no* (bef. v.) . . . *jamás* or *nunca* (aft. v.) 'never': — *no la he visto jamás* 'I have never seen her.'

*no* (bef. v.) *más que* or *sino* (aft. v.), 'only': *no tengo más que uno* 'I have only one.'

*no* (bef. v.) . . . *ni* (bef. noun) 'neither . . . nor': — *no tengo ni padre ni madre* 'I have neither father nor mother.'

*ni . . . ni* (without verb) 'neither . . . nor': — *ni padre ni madre* 'neither father nor mother.'

NOTE 1. — *Jamás, nunca, ni* may also be placed before the verb without *no*: — *Jamás la he visto. Ni padre ni madre tengo.*

NOTE 2. — The auxiliary 'do' is not expressed in Spanish.

### Prepositions.

**100.** The prepositions are either: *a. Single* like *á* 'to,' *ante* 'before,' *hasta* 'till,' *tras* 'after,' *hacia* 'towards'; or *b. Prepositional phrases* like *acerca de* 'about,' *antes de* 'before,' *al través de* 'across.'

[101.] Among common (but more or less idiomatic) prepositional phrases may be noted: *frente á* 'opposite to,' *junto á* 'close by, near'; — *adelante de* 'beside,' *alrededor de* 'around,' *debajo de* 'under'; — *á fuerza de* 'by dint of,' *al través de* 'across'; — *en lugar de* 'instead of,' *en vez de* 'instead of'; — *sin embargo de* 'notwithstanding.'

### Conjunctions.

**102.** Conjunctions are either: *a. Single* like *y* (*é*: 104) 'and,' *pero* 'but,' *si* 'if,' *o* (*u*: 104) 'or'; or *b. Conjunctional phrases* like *bien que* 'although,' *á menos que* 'unless,' *á fin de que* 'in order that.'



[103.] Among common (but more or less idiomatic) conjunctive phrases may be noted: *d menos que* 'unless,' *bien que* 'although,' *como quiera que* 'however,' *con que* 'therefore,' *con tal que* 'provided that,' *de manera (modo) que* 'so that,' *dado que* 'in case that,' *desde que* 'since,' *mientras que* 'while,' *por más (menos) que* 'however much (little),' *pues (supuesto) que* 'since.'

104. *Y* 'and' assumes its older form *é* before a word with initial *i-* or *hi-*; and *ó* 'or' is *ú* before *o-*, *ho-*:— *malo é impuro* 'bad and impure'; *madre é hija* 'mother and daughter'; *diez ú once* 'ten or eleven.'

### *Interjections.*

105. The interjections are either: *a. Single* like *oh!* 'oh!', *ea!* 'come!', *cáspita!* 'zounds!', *caramba!* 'egad!', *anda!* 'come!'; or **Interjectional phrases** like *por Dios!* 'heavens!', *al asesino!* 'murder!', *necio de mí!* 'silly me!', *pobre (or ay) de mí!* 'alas for me!', etc.

---

EXERCISE XXI.

---

## SYNTAX.

---

In general only such modes of construction as differ from the English are here noticed under the head of Syntax.

### IX.

#### *Articles.*

**106. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.** Spanish differs from English in the use of the definite article chiefly in the following regards.

[107.] Spanish requires the article :

1. Before all nouns used in a **generic** sense (so that 'in general,' 'all,' 'every' may be understood). This rule may affect abstract or collective nouns and nouns of material in the singular, and any noun in the plural :

*La vida es breve.*

Life is short.

*El oro es más precioso que la plata.*

Gold is more precious than silver.

*Los caballos son útiles.*

Horses are useful.

2. To denote **time** and **season** :

*A la una (viz. hora).*

At one o'clock.

*Son las dos.*

It is two o'clock.

*Vendrá el sábado.*

He will come on Saturday.

*En la primavera.*

In the spring.

NOTE. — Before names of languages *el* likewise denotes entirety: *Habla el español* 'He speaks Spanish' (= knows it as a whole). *Habla español* 'He is speaking Spanish' (= using it now).

3. After **con** and **tener** before names of some constituent part of an object (especially organic) :

*Ella respondió con los ojos abajados.* She answered with downcast eyes.

*Tiene la mano pequeña.* She has a small hand.

*Algunos árboles tienen las ramas pendientes.* Some trees have hanging branches.

4. Before **titles**, save in address :

*El señor y la señora A.* Mr. and Mrs. A.

*El emperador Carlos.* Emperor Charles.

5. Before various **proper names**, viz. :

a. Optionally or necessarily with names of countries, except when used (after *de*) to denote origin or title. Only a few distant countries (*el China, el Brasil*, etc.) and those qualified by some word, require the article: — (**La**) *Francia* 'France.' *Los vinos de Francia* 'French wines.' **El Perú.** **La América setentrional.**

b. With names of mountains and rivers: **el Etna; el Ebro.**

c. With names of persons used figuratively, classical Ital. authors, and famous titles of works: **el Alejandro del Norte** 'the Alexander of the North'; **el Dante**; **estoy leyendo el Quijote** 'I am reading Don Q.'

d. Familiarly with Christian names of women: **la María.**

6. Before nouns of **weight** and **measure** :

*Dos duros la libra (la vara,* Two dollars a pound (a yard, etc.). etc.).

7. In various conventional **phrases**: e. g. *á la escuela* 'at school'; *en la ciudad* 'in town'; *dar las buenas noches* 'bid good night'; *dar el parabien* 'congratulate'; etc.

8. About the optional use of the def. article for the def. possessive, cf. 124.

[108.] Spanish omits the article :

1. With **appositional** and modified **predicative** nouns :

<i>Don Quijote, obra del inmortal Cervantes.</i>	Don Quixote, <i>the</i> work of the immortal C.
<i>Londres, capital de Inglaterra.</i>	London, <i>the</i> capital of England.
<i>Es hija de un conde.</i>	She is <i>the</i> daughter of an earl.
<i>La necesidad es madre de la invención.</i>	Necessity is <i>the</i> mother of invention.

2. Before **numerals** when used as titles: *Carlos quinto* 'Charles *the* Fifth.'

3. In various conventional **phrases**: e. g. *á esquina* 'on the corner'; *á razon de* 'at the rate of'; *tener intencion* 'have the intention, intend'; *tener costumbre* 'have the habit'; etc.

**109. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.** The indefinite article is omitted in Spanish :

1. Before **predicative** nouns denoting what a person is, or is made :

<i>Su amigo es general.</i>	His friend is <i>a</i> general.
<i>Se ha hecho soldado.</i>	He has become <i>a</i> soldier.

2. After **tener** with nouns denoting such conditions as 'hunger,' 'thirst,' etc., or some quality (chiefly when qualified) :

<i>Tengo hambre (sed).</i>	I am hungry (thirsty).
<i>Tengo (buen) apetito.</i>	I have a (good) appetite.
<i>Tiene buen corazón.</i>	He has <i>a</i> good heart.

3. After various **indefinites** (*otro, tal, cierto, tanto, semejante, número de*, etc.) :

<i>Otro día. Otra vez.</i>	<i>Another day Another time.</i>
----------------------------	----------------------------------

<i>Tal día. Tal noche.</i>	Such <i>a</i> day. Such <i>a</i> night.
<i>Perdió gran parte de su caudal.</i>	He lost <i>a</i> large part of his capital.
<i>Se fué sin decir palabra.</i>	He went away without saying <i>a</i> word.

4. After an exclamatory **que** :

*¡Que hermoso paisaje!*                      What a fine landscape !

5. Like the definite article, before **appositional** nouns :

*Calderón, poeta dramático.*              Calderon, *a* dramatic poet.

---

EXERCISE XXII.

---

X.

**Nouns.**

**110. DIRECT OBJECT WITH *á*** (= 'Personal accusative'). Spanish differs from English — as from other languages generally — in often using the preposition *á* before a **direct object** (noun or tonic pronoun) denoting a person or personified thing, or for certain distinctions.

This use of *á* is, indeed, largely optional; but the following is the general rule. Unless the verb governs also a dative, use *á* with a direct object denoting

*a.* a **definite living** being. [After *tener* 'have,' verbs of 'making, appointing,' or a numeral, *á* however is not used.]

*b.* a definite **thing** treated as a *living being*. [Exceptions as above, *a.*]

*c.* a person or thing generally, when *á* serves to **distinguish** between object and subject or predicate object.

In other cases ('Impersonal accusatives') omit *á*. Thus:

Direct object with *á*:

Direct object without *á*:

*a.*

*Amo (quiero) á su madre.* I love her mother.

*Prefiero su madre á su padre (dat.).* I prefer her mother to her father.

*Busco al criado.* I seek the servant.

*Busco un criado.* I seek a servant (indef.).

*¿A quién buscas?* Whom do you seek?

*Busco (quiero) un médico que sea experto.* I seek an expert doctor.

*Honra al padre y á la madre.* Honor thy father and mother (def.).

*Honrarás padre y madre.* Thou shalt honor (thy) father and (thy) mother.

*Amas á tu buena madre.* Thou lovest thy good mother.

*Tienes una buena madre.* Thou hast a good mother.

*No veo á nadie.* I see nobody.

*Veo seis hombres.* I see six men.

*Conozco á este hombre.* I know this man.

*He convidado algunos amigos.* I have invited a few friends (indef.).

*Leo á Cervantes.* I read C.

*Nos llama perros.* He calls us dogs.

*Ensilla á Rosinante.* Saddle Rosinante.

*Nos (dat.) da un caballo.* He gives us a horse.

*b.*

*Ama (defiende) á la patria.* He loves (defends) his country.

*El hombre digno ama (á) la virtud.* A worthy man loves virtue.

*Recompensan al mérito.* They reward merit.

*Leen el libro (un libro).* They read the (a) book.



<i>Llamó á la muerte.</i>	He in-	<i>Edificó la casa.</i>	He built the
voked death.		house.	
<i>Ganaron á Granada (Madrid).</i>		<i>Pizarro conquistó el Perú.</i>	Pi-
They won G. (M.).		zarro conquered Peru.	

NOTE: names of countries and cities without article have *d*.

*c.*

<i>Rige al nombre la preposición.</i>	The preposition governs the
	noun.
<i>Mató el perro al lobo.<sup>1</sup></i>	The dog killed the wolf.
<i>El vicio aborrece á la virtud.<sup>2</sup></i>	Vice abhors virtue.
<i>El invierno sigue al otoño.</i>	Winter follows autumn.
<i>Llama carácter (pred. obj.) á su capricho.</i>	He calls his caprice character.
<i>Unos anteojos que hacen parecer oro al cobre, á la pobreza riqueza.</i>	Spectacles which make copper seem gold, poverty richness.

[The peculiar construction of the 'personal accusative' with *d*, due to a tendency of expressing direction *towards* the object of the verb, and the occasional necessity of distinguishing between subj. or predicate and object where their position is so free as in Spanish, may be compared with the French use of *à* with an object-infinitive (cf. Edgren's French grammar, § 340): e. g. *il aime à parler* 'he loves speaking.']

NOTE 1. — Usually, but not necessarily, *d* is omitted for euphony where it would come in contact with *a*: *Mira aquella señora.* 'He sees that lady.'

NOTE 2. — Some verbs modify their meaning when construed with *d*: e. g. *perder* 'lose': *perder d* 'destroy'; *querer* 'wish (to have)': *querer d* 'love'; *robar* 'steal': *robar d* 'rob'; *buscar* 'seek': *buscar d* 'try to procure'; *dejar* 'leave (behind)': *dejar d* 'abandon.'

111. The use of nouns with prepositions in indirect construction is in the main accordant with such use in English. Among deviations and distinctions may be noticed here:

<sup>1</sup> Might also come under *a*.

<sup>2</sup> Or under *ò*.



*de* 'to' (*el camino de M.* 'the road to M. '); 'for' (*lloro de gozo* 'I weep for joy'; 'as' (*va de maestro* 'he goes as a teacher'); to form the possessive and compounds (*el hijo del hombre* 'the man's son'; *un buzon de correos* 'a post-box');

*ante, delante de* 'before' (of place, person, etc.): *antes de* 'before' (of time, order, or rank);

*tras, detrás de* 'after, behind' (of place, order): *después de* 'after' (of time, order);

*para* 'for' (of destination, intention, certain time): *por* 'for' (= 'in behalf of,' 'for the sake of,' 'by' after passives, 'as,' 'by way of,' 'through,' and with reference to continued time).

## XI.

*Adjectives.*

112. AGREEMENT. The rules of agreement are as follows:

*a.* Adjectives determining **one** noun agree with it in gender and number:

*El buen* (for *bueno*) *padre; la buena madre; los buenos hijos.* The good father; the good mother; the good sons.

*El padre es bueno; la madre es buena; las hijas son buenas.* The father is good; the mother is good; the daughters are good.

NOTE.— Adjectives determining one only of the objects denoted by a plural noun are in the singular: *los idiomas español é inglés* 'the Spanish and English languages.'

*b.* Adjectives determining **two** or more *distinct* nouns of the **same** gender agree with them all collectively, being in the plural:

*Los andantes caballero y escudero* (cf. note). The errant knight and squire.

*El embajador y el almirante ingleses.* The English ambassador and admiral.

NOTE.—Adjectives determining synonymous nouns agree with the nearest: *con demasiada indulgencia y suavidad* ‘with extreme forbearance and gentleness.’ This agreement frequently occurs also in other cases when the adjective *precedes* its nouns.

c. Adjectives determining **two** or more *distinct* nouns of **different** gender agree with the nearest noun when they precede them, while otherwise they are masculine plural (or fem. pl. if the nearest preceding noun is such):

*Con tanta furia y enojo.* With so great fury and bitterness.

*Era la tiranía, la ferocidad y el orgullo personificados.* He was tyranny, ferocity, and pride personified.

*El hijo y la hija son buenos.* The son and the daughter are good.

*El rey y la reina, contentísimos, hicieron venir el autor.* The king and the queen, most pleased, sent for the author.

*Sus ojos y su larga barba eran negros.* His eyes and his heavy beard were black.

*Ojos y orejas abiertas.* Open eyes and ears.

NOTE 1.—Of two single nouns of different number, the plural noun is usually placed last: *boca y ojos pequeños* ‘small mouth and eyes.’

NOTE 2.—*Mucho, poco, tanto, cuanto, bastante* are often treated as adjectives before *más, menos*, or when used substantively: *Yo tengo muchos más libros que mi amigo. Unas pocas de ciruelas* (‘cherries’).

**113. POSITION.** The attributive adjectives may precede or follow their noun. Often the position is a matter of taste. In general, however, the following rule is observed:

a. They **precede** their noun when they denote a quality which as a matter of course or by compliment belongs to it and is not therefore emphasized; and also by euphony when they are short and denote common qualities.

b. They **follow** their noun when they denote an emphasized quality distinguishing it from other objects of the kind (as especially when they denote color, form, nationality, etc., or when they are participles).

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| a. <i>El vasto</i> (or <i>la vasta</i> : 31) | The wide sea.                 |
| <i>mar.</i>                                  |                               |
| <i>Las bellas artes.</i>                     | The fine arts.                |
| <i>El brillante y vencedor acero</i>         | The conqueror's brilliant and |
| <i>del conquistador.</i>                     | victorious steel (= blade).   |
| <i>Un dulce reposo.</i>                      | A sweet rest.                 |
| <i>Mi buen amigo.</i>                        | My good friend.               |
| b. <i>Tengo una rosa blanca.</i>             | I have a white rose.          |
| <i>Tengo una mesa redonda.</i>               | I have a round table.         |
| <i>El idioma español.</i>                    | The Spanish language.         |
| <i>Un ejército vencido.</i>                  | A vanquished army.            |
| <i>Es una cosa imposible.</i>                | It is an impossible thing.    |

NOTE. — Some adjectives have a different meaning according as they precede or follow their noun: e. g. *buena noche* 'good night': *noche buena* 'Christmas eve'; *gran caballo* 'splendid horse': *caballo grande* 'big horse'; *nuevo libro* 'new (= different) book': *libro nuevo* 'new book'; *cierta cosa* 'a certain thing': *cosa cierta* 'certain (= sure) thing'; *pobre autor* 'poor (= worthless or pitiable) author': *autor pobre* 'poor (= indigent) author.'

## XII.

*Numerals.*

**114. CARDINALS FOR ORDINALS.** The cardinals are used instead of the ordinals :

*a.* To denote the **day of the month** (except *primero*) : —  
*El cinco de julio* ‘the 5th of July.’

*b.* With **names of sovereigns** from ‘eleventh’ inclusive : —  
*Leon once* (*trece*) ‘Leo XI (XIII). *Luis catorce* ‘Louis XIV’ ;  
but *Carlos cuarto* (ord.) ‘Charles IV.’

NOTE. — In quotation (of volume etc.) cardinals are also more common than ordinals : — *canto veinte* ‘the twentieth canto.’

**115. IDIOMS.** The following common idioms may be observed :

<i>¿Qué hora es ?</i>	What time is it?
<i>Es la una</i> (viz. <i>hora</i> ).	It is one o'clock.
<i>Son las dos</i> ( <i>tres</i> , etc.).	It is two (three, etc.) o'clock.
<i>Es la una</i> ( <i>Son las dos</i> ) <i>y media</i> .	It is half past one (half past two).
<i>Es la una</i> ( <i>Son las dos</i> ) <i>y cuarto</i> .	It is a quarter past one (past two).
<i>Es la una</i> ( <i>Son las dos</i> ) <i>y tres cuartos</i> , or <i>Son las dos</i> ( <i>tres</i> ) <i>ménos cuarto</i> .	It is a quarter to two (to three).
<i>¿Qué día del mes tenemos ?</i> or <i>¿A cuántos estamos del mes ?</i>	} What day of the month is it?
<i>Tenemos el primero</i> ( <i>dos</i> , etc.).	
<i>¿Cuántos años tiene V. ?</i> or <i>¿Qué edad tiene V. ?</i>	} How old are you?
<i>Tengo veinte años</i> .	
<i>Ocho días ; quince días</i> .	A week ; a fortnight.

## XIII.

**Pronouns.**

## PERSONALS.

116. THE PERSONAL SUBJECT is usually, though not necessarily, left unexpressed, unless required for emphasis or distinctness :

<i>Tengo un libro, lo sabe.</i>	I have a book, he knows it.
<i>El se va, ella se queda.</i>	He goes away, she stays.
<i>¿Qué he de hacer yo?</i>	What have I to do?

117. The third persons are often used where English has 'one, some, any, such,' especially after *hay* 'there is (are)':

<i>Dame un libro si le hay.</i>	Give me a book if there is one.
<i>Compraré billetes si los hay.</i>	I shall buy tickets if there are any.
<i>Cree que no tengo una carta y la tengo.</i>	He believes I have no letters, and I have one.

NOTE 1.—*Lo* 'it' is also used predicatively with reference to an adjective or noun where in English no corresponding word is used:

<i>¿Son ellas huérfanas? Lo son.</i>	Are they orphans? They are.
--------------------------------------	-----------------------------

NOTE 2.—In certain idioms *la* and *las* are used as neuters (*cosa*, f., 'thing' being understood):—*tomarla despacio* 'to take it quietly'; *habérselas con alguno* 'have to do with somebody.'

118. DEMONSTRATIVE *el* FOR PERSONALS. The demonstrative *el* (*la, lo; los, las*) is often used instead of a personal pronoun before relatives and numerals :

<i>El (or usually Yo) que tengo tanta paciencia como V.</i>	I who have as much patience as you.
---	-------------------------------------

<i>Todos los que formamos la nación española.</i>	All of us (= we) who form the Spanish nation.
<i>Ayúdanos á los dos.</i>	Help us both of us.

**119. EXPLETIVE CONSTRUCTION.** Object-personals are often, by emphasis or not, expressed both by a **tonic** and **atonic** form, the tonic coming first, or (less emphatically) following the verb. In the same way an atonic personal may anticipate expletively any object.

<i>A mí (ton.) me (aton. dat.) parece.</i>	It seems to me.
<i>A ti te (A él le, A nosotros nos, etc.) parece.</i>	It seems to thee (to him, to us, etc.).
<i>¿A mí qué me importa?</i>	What does it matter to me?
<i>A ella le quieren mucho.</i>	They love her much.
<i>Eso no lo (acc.) hago.</i>	I shall not do that.
<i>Le (dat. m. or f. according to the gender of V.) pido á V. mil perdones.</i>	I ask you a thousand pardons.
<i>¿Qué se le ofrece á V.?</i>	What is your desire? (lit. 'What offers itself to you?').
<i>A Carlos le sucedía así.</i>	Thus it happened to Charles.
<i>A los caballeros les (dat.) pareció bien.</i>	It seemed good to the gentlemen.
<i>Todo lo vence el amor.</i>	Love conquers everything.
<i>A los Españoles nos gusta charlar.</i>	We Spaniards like to gossip (lit. It pleases us Sp. etc.).

**120. POSITION.** The rules for the position of the personals are already given 57-58. It may be added here simply that the atonic object-pronoun may be appended to any positive verb-form *beginning* a sentence or used



alone:—*réstame decir* 'it remains for me to say'; *lisonjéome* 'I flatter myself.'

## POSSESSIVES.

**121. AGREEMENT.** The possessives agree in gender and number with the object possessed:

*mi amigo; mis amigos; su madre y la mía.*

**122. Mio etc.**—The tonic possessives *mío* etc. (without article) are used chiefly: *a.* after nouns of indeterminate construction (preceded by 'a,' 'some,' etc.); *b.* after impersonal nouns in definite construction (preceded by *el*); *c.* as predicatives with the verb 'be':

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| a. <i>Un amigo <b>mío</b>.</i>         | A friend of mine.    |
| <i>Unos amigos <b>suyos</b>.</i>       | Some friends of his. |
| b. <i>El deseo <b>mío</b>.</i>         | My desire.           |
| <i>Las virtudes <b>suyas</b>.</i>      | His virtues.         |
| c. <i>Este caballo es <b>tuyo</b>.</i> | This horse is thine. |
| <i><b>Mío</b> es el mérito.</i>        | Mine is the merit.   |

NOTE 1.—*El mío* etc. are used after the verb 'be' to emphasize distinction:—*Esta pluma es mía* 'This pen is mine'; but *Esta pluma es la mía* 'This pen (not the other) is mine.'

NOTE 2.—In direct address *mío* is used with a single noun, but *mi* or *mio* with a noun determined by an adjective or participle:—*amigo mío; mi querido amigo* or *querido amigo mío* 'my dear friend.'

**123. EXPLETIVE CONSTRUCTION.** For emphasis or distinction *su* 'his (her etc.)' may be repeated after its noun by *de él* (*ella* etc.), and *su* 'your' by *de usted*:

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| <i>Su libro de él (ella, ellos, -as).</i> | His (her, their) book. |
| <i>Su pluma (libro) de V.</i>             | Your pen (book).       |

**124. DEFINITE ARTICLE FOR POSSESSIVES.** Where no ambiguity would arise, the atonic possessive may be replaced by the definite article. Especially common is this where all ambiguity is avoided by using a reflexive dative before the verb:

*Ama á la patria.*

He loves his country.

*Me (dat.) corté la mano.*

I cut my hand (*lit.* the hand for myself).

*Se cortó la mano.*

He cut his hand.

*Se quitó los guantes.*

He took off his gloves.

#### DEMONSTRATIVES.

**125. *Este, ese, aquel*** usually precede their noun. By emphasis they may be placed after their noun, which then has the definite article. — *Este hombre* or *El hombre este*.

**126. *Esta, esa*** are sometimes used after *en* ‘in’ in sense of ‘here, there’ (*ciudad*, f., ‘city’ or *plaza*, f., ‘market’ being understood): — *En ésta no hay novedad* ‘There is nothing new here.’

**127. THE NEUTERS (*esto* etc.)** refer to a complete thought. *Lo* also serves to denote (with *que*) ‘how (much).’

*Esto es cierto.*

That is certain.

*Eso es otra cosa.*

That is another thing.

*He visto lo que V. le quiere.*

I have seen how much you love her.

*En eso se conoce lo tontos que sois.*

By this may be seen how stupid you are.

## INTERROGATIVES AND RELATIVES.

**128. AGREEMENT.** The interrogatives and relatives agree (as far as inflected) with the persons or things they represent. *Cúyo, cuyo*, however, agree, like possessives, with the object possessed :

*Tengo una carta de mis hijas quienes (or las cuales) están en Nueva York.* I have a letter from my daughters, who are in New York.

*El joven cuyo padre (cuya madre, cuyas hermanas) conozco.* The youth whose father (mother, sisters) I know.

**129. *Quien, el cual, que.*** — *Quien* can refer only to persons; *que* (observing 61, note), *el cual* to persons or things. Besides, the following is usually observed :

*quien* is especially *continuative*, used to continue a thought complete by itself. It also serves to distinguish persons from things ; and is also used for ' he who ' (pl. ' those who ').

*Topé con un hombre, quien (or el cual) me contó todo.* I fell in with a man, who told me all.

*Conozco al general del ejército, quien me lo dijo.* I know the general of the army, who told me about it.

*el cual* is only *continuative*. It also serves to distinguish between objects of different gender where the reference might be doubtful (and may be replaced by *el que*) :

*Ayer encontré á un amigo, el cual (or quien) me dijo que ha habido una batalla.* Yesterday I met a friend, who told me that there has been a battle.

*He visto la hija de mi amigo, la cual está enferma.* I have seen my friend's daughter, who is ill.

**que** is *defining*, introducing something necessary to define or complete a thought which would be meaningless without it :

*El hombre que trabaja es feliz.* The man who works is happy.  
*No hay diligencia humana que no puede parvenir.* There is no human diligence but may succeed.

These rules might be summarized thus: use *quien, el cual* when 'who (which)' can be changed to 'and he (it etc.),' otherwise *que*, the former with comma, the latter without.

**130.** EXPLETIVE CONSTRUCTION. — After a relative object a personal pronoun may be used expletively in the same case: — *Llamó á un amigo, al que le habló* 'He summoned a friend to whom he spoke.'

#### INDEFINITES.

**131.** *Algo* is often used adverbially in sense of 'somewhat': — *Estoy algo malucho* 'I am somewhat ailing.'

**132.** *Nadie, nada* mean 'anybody, anything' when used in sentences involving a negation without *no* (i. e. in exclamatories and questions of appeal, after verbs of warning etc., and after *sin* 'without,' *antes* 'before'). With *no* they mean 'not anybody (nobody),' 'not anything (nothing).' This meaning they also have elliptically without *no* when they precede the verb, or are used without verb.

<i>¡Cómo negarle á él nada!</i>	How can you refuse him anything!
<i>Guárdese V. de decirlo á nadie.</i>	Beware how you tell it to anybody.
<i>Sin ayuda de nadie.</i>	Without assistance of anybody.
<i>No ha venido nadie.</i>	} Nobody has come.
<i>Nadie ha venido.</i>	
<i>No comió nada.</i>	He ate nothing.

<i>Yo nada temo la muerte.</i>	I nowise fear death.
<i>No he visto á nadie.</i>	I have seen nobody.
<i>¿Ha venido alguien? Nadie.</i>	Has anybody come? Nobody.
<i>¿Qué dice? Nada.</i>	What does he say? Nothing.

133. *Fulano de tal* means 'so and so,' used alone.

134. *Otro* cannot be preceded, like 'other' in English, by 'an-': *otro caballo* 'another horse.' *Al otro día* means 'the next day.'

135. *Tal* with a preceding *un* means 'a certain.' It may serve also to emphasize *sí* 'yes,' *no* 'no,' *qué* 'how?': *Sí tal* 'Yes (indeed).' *¿Qué tal?* 'How are you?'

*Tal cual* means 'such as, so so, pretty well.'

136. *Ninguno*, which contains itself a negative (Lat. *nec-unus*), requires nevertheless, like *nadie*, *no* when it follows a verb. With a noun its position is after it.

<i>Ninguno ha venido.</i>	}	No one has come.
<i>No ha venido ninguno.</i>		
<i>No tengo hijo ninguno.</i>		I have no child (whatever).

In a sentence involving a negation without *no* it means 'any-(body),' just like *nadie* (cf. 132); but *alguno* is then preferable with a noun: *Sin que ninguno venga* 'Without anybody coming.' *Sin duda alguna* 'Without any doubt.'

137. *Todo* without determinative means 'every'; with the article or possessive, 'the whole, all the': — *toda ciudad* 'every city'; *toda la ciudad* 'the whole city.'

## XIV.

*Verbs.*

**138. AGREEMENT.** Verbs agree, as in English, in number and person with their subject, or with their subjects collectively (when thus considered): *El ama; ellos aman; el padre y la madre aman.*

NOTE. — Singular collectives require the singular, except when followed by a plural adjunct expressed or understood:

*La gente lo dice.*

People say so.

*Multitud de niños vinieron.*

Many children came.

**139. VOICE.** Spanish differs from English chiefly by a very frequent use of the **reflexive** construction instead of the passive or some other construction: — *se dice* ‘it is said’; *se me engaña* ‘I am deceived’; *aquí se habla Español* ‘Spanish is spoken here’; *el libro se publica* ‘the book is published’; etc. And cf. § 92, and Exercise XIX.

**140. MODES.** Spanish differs from English by a frequent use of the **Subjunctive** mode, as described in 148 etc.

**141. INDICATIVE TENSES.** With reference to time the indicative tenses are used in Spanish in the main as in English. The following is to be observed:

[142.] **The Simple Present** expresses a present condition continued from the past; and the **Periphrastic** often replaces a preterit (especially for unspecified past, or when the result of the act is yet felt):

*Hace un año que vivo aquí.*

I have been living here a year  
(lit. It is a year that I live  
here).

*Hace ocho días que no le veo.*

It is a week since I have seen  
him.



¿Cuánto tiempo **hace que está** aquí? How long have you been here?

**Hace mucho que estoy** aquí. I have been here a long time.

**Han llegado** (or *llegaron*) **ayer**. They arrived yesterday.

[143.] **The Imperfect** (simple) is especially the *descriptive* tense, denoting incompleted or cursory state or action in the past :

**Escribía** cuando entró. I was writing when he entered.

Cuando **estaba** en Londres **iba** cada día al teatro. When I was in London, I used to go to the theatre every day.

NOTE. — Exceptionally it is used for a conditional to denote certainty :

*Si viniera* **ayer** **moría**. If he had come yesterday he would have died.

[144.] The periphrastic imperfect ('pluperfect') denotes an action completed with reference to a subsequent or simultaneous action :

*Lo había leído* cuando entró. I had read it when he entered.

[145.] **The Preterit** (simple) *relates* a past occurrence complete in itself, without reference to the condition arising from it. It is the tense of historical narration.

*Ayer* **vi** á mi amigo. Yesterday I saw my friend.

*Cristóbal Colón descubrió* á *America*. Christopher Columbus discovered America.

[146.] The periphrastic preterit ('past anterior') is distinguished from the periphrastic imperfect by being usually introduced by some conjunction of time (*cuando, después que, luego que, etc.*).

*Cuando lo hube leído* entró. When I had read it he entered.

[147.] **The Future and Conditional** (simple or periphrastic), aside from their ordinary use as in English, sometimes serve to express probability, conjecture, or possibility, the conditional more remotely than the future :

<i>Le habrá todo dicho.</i> <sup>1</sup>	He has probably told him all.
<i>Estará enfermo pues no me escribe.</i>	He must be sick, since he does not write me.
<i>Serían las seis de la madrugada.</i>	It might have been (was about) 6 A. M.
<i>¿Habrá venido acaso mi criado?</i>	Has my servant come?

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

148. The subjunctive mode is used in *independent* or in *subordinate* clauses.

149. **The Independent Subjunctive** serves to denote in an *imperative* or *exclamatory* way that the act expressed by the verb is in some manner **willed** (desired, commanded, etc.) or **allowed**, a governing expression to that effect being elliptically implied. It regularly supplies the first and third persons of the imperative.

<i>¡Dios te guarde!</i>	God keep thee!
<i>¡Viva la patria!</i>	Long live our country!
<i>Dispénseme V.</i>	Excuse me, sir (I beg your pardon).
<i>Figúrese V.</i>	Just imagine.
<i>Séale la tierra leve.</i>	Be the ground light on him.
<i>Que pase.</i>	Let him pass.
<i>Venga lo que viniere.</i>	Come what may.

<sup>1</sup> Comp. French *Il lui aura tout dit* (Germ. Er wird ihm alles gesagt haben).

**150. The Dependent Subjunctive** is used in subordinate conjunctive or relative clauses to qualify the notion of their verb-phrase with reference to a preceding expression as I. **not realized** (but simply willed, feared, doubted, supposed, etc.) ; or II. as causing **emotion** (surprise, joy, sorrow, approval, blame, etc.) ; or III. as admitted with **mental reserve** (being subject to error etc.).

These three divisions are further described below :

[151.] *The subjunctive of unrealized or uncertain completion* is used :

a. With the conjunction *que* after verbs and phrases expressing in an affirmative or negative way a **will** (wish, hope, command, request, etc., or their opposites as fear, forbidding, etc.), **intention** (expectation, permission, etc.), or **necessity** (obligation, propriety, etc.) :

<i>Quiero</i> <sup>1</sup> ( <i>espero</i> ) <i>que su amigo venga.</i>	I wish (hope) his friend may come.
<i>No esperé á que me lo dijese dos veces.</i>	I did not expect him to tell me so twice.
<i>Temo que no haya recibido la carta.</i>	I fear he has not received the letter.
<i>Mandó que se hiciera.</i>	He ordered it to be done.
<i>Conjúrote que me digas la verdad.</i>	I entreat thee to tell me the truth.
<i>Cuida (prohíbe) que nadie interrumpa.</i>	Take care that nobody interrupts (Forbid any one to interrupt).
<i>Consiento á que venga.</i>	I consent to his coming.
<i>Es necesario que escriba.</i>	I must write.
<i>Es hora que prosigamos nuestro camino.</i>	It is time we should continue our journey.
<i>Conviene que lo haga.</i>	It is proper that he should do it.

<sup>1</sup> Governing words spaced, the subjunctive in heavy type.

NOTE 1.—Here belongs also the subjunctive with a relative after verbs of **seeking** (something with a desired quality), and the like:—*Busco (quiero) un guía que me conduzca* ‘I seek (would like) a guide to lead me.’

NOTE 2.—*Que* may be omitted, especially before *no*: *Temía no le cogiese á palabras* ‘He was afraid he might take him *at his words*.’

*b.* After conjunctions referring to an indefinite **future**, a **purpose** or **condition** (such as *cuando* ‘when’ and many conjunctional phrases like *antes que* ‘before,’ *á fin de que* ‘to the end that,’ *hasta que* ‘until,’ *con tal que* ‘provided that,’ *si*, ‘if,’ etc):

<i>Cuando hable con los niños, lo diré.</i>	When I speak with the children, I shall say so.
<i>Le riño para que (á fin de que) se enmiende.</i>	I scold him that he may amend.
<i>Luego que os vean os pedirán.</i>	As soon as they see you they will ask you.
<i>Esperarán hasta que venga.</i>	They will wait till he comes.
<i>Le tendré por reliquia mientras la vida me durare.</i>	I shall keep it as a relic as long as my life lasts.
<i>Si amases los libros serías más instruido.</i>	If you loved books you would be more instructed.

*c.* With *que* (or a relative) after verbs or phrases denoting **uncertainty** (doubt, improbability, interrogative or conditional statements), **impossibility**, or **denial**:

<i>Dudo (no creo) que lo haga.</i>	I doubt (do not believe) he will do it.
<i>Es posible (imposible) que vuelva mañana.</i>	It is possible (impossible) that he return to-morrow.
<i>Puede ser que él lo sepa.</i>	It may be that he knows it.
<i>¿Hay alguna que lo dude?</i>	Is there any one (f.) who doubts it?
<i>No hay quien lo crea.</i>	There is no one who believes it.
<i>Niego que sea verdad.</i>	I deny that it be true.

[152.] II. *The subjunctive of emotion* is used:

a. With the conjunction *que* after verbs and phrases denoting an **emotion** (surprise, disappointment, joy, sorrow, vexation, etc.) :

*Me admiro que no lo confiese.* I am surprised he does not confess it.

*Me alegro de que el venga.* I am glad he is coming.

*Estaba contento con que me hallase en casa.* He was pleased to find me in the house.

*Siento que no haya podido venir V.* I am sorry you were not able to come.

[153.] III. *The subjunctive of mental reserve* is used :

a. With relatives when the speaker wishes to soften a **sweeping** (superlative, negative, etc.) assertion :

*Estos son los mejores libros que yo conozca* (or *-co*; cf. note). These are the best books I know.

*No había quien se fuese á ellos.* There was no one who would trust them.

NOTE.—This subjunctive is not at all so common as in French or Italian, and usage varies.

b. After **concessive** or **hypothetical** conjunctions (such as *aunque* ‘although’ and phrases like *dado que* ‘granted that,’ *por...que* ‘however,’ *supuesto que* ‘allowing that’), whether expressed or understood ; and after **indefinite** relatives :

*Quiero ir aunque e, § 5 e) llueva.* I wish to go, although it rains (though it rain).

*Por buen que sea.* However good he be.

*Supuesto que sea verdad.* Allowing it to be true.

*Quienquiera sea.* Whoever he be.

*Cualquiera tiempo que haga, he de salir.* Whatever weather it be, I must go (out).

**154. SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES.** The tense of the dependent subjunctive is usually determined by the tense of the principal clause. It is:

*a. Present* after a *present* or *future*:— *No digo que venga. Le escribiré que venga.*

*b. Imperfect* (or, optionally, **Conditional**) after a *preterit* or *conditional*:— *No creía que viniese* (or *viniera*).

*c. Future* after *si, cuando, mientras* or a relative to express future contingency:— *mientras durare la vida.*

*d. Conditional* after words of condition, concession or desire, or gentle assertion; and optionally for the imperfect (*b*):— *Si tuvieran* (*tuviessen*) *paciencia, vivirían felices* ‘If you were patient, you would live happy.’ *Prometiérame* (153 *b*) *él montes de oro, no lo haría* ‘Even if he were to promise me mountains of gold, I should not do it.’ Cond. *si* takes imperf. or condit.

[155.] The periphrastic tenses are used in the same way, only that they serve to express past time relatively to the time of the principal verb.

#### INFINITIVE.

**156.** The infinitive is in Spanish, as in English, construed both as a noun and verb. In sense it corresponds to the English infinitive proper, or to the gerund in *-ing*.

#### *Infinitive as a noun.*

**157.** The infinitive may be construed, like other nouns, with any **determinative**: *el bailar* ‘(the) dancing’ (definite or generic); *un obrar* ‘an action’; *este bailar tan gracioso* ‘this graceful dancing’; *el mucho beber* ‘(the) much drinking; etc. (cf. examples below).



**158.** The infinitive may be used, like other nouns, **directly** or with a **preposition**. As in English it often takes a preposition (the 'infinitive sign') even as object or predicative; but it does not as subject. Details below.

[159.] **THE DIRECT INFINITIVE** is used as subject; usually as predicative or direct object (exceptions in 160); and after *servirse*, *dignarse* and impersonal expressions:

*Decir y hacer son dos cosas.* Saying and doing are two things.

*El comenzar es á menudo más difícil que el acabar.* To begin is often harder than to complete.

*Querer es poder.* To will is to be able (Where there is a will there is a way).

*No conviene hacerlo.* It is not wise to do it.

*Me sería fácil conquistar su corazón.* It would be easy for me to conquer her heart.

*Decidí viajar.* I determined to set out.

*Celebraría verle á V. allí.* I should be glad to see you there.

*Piensa partir pronto.* He intends to go soon.

*Deseo hablar con ella.* I wish to speak with her.

*Sírvase V. entrar.* Please enter.

*Es menester vengarse.* It is necessary to take revenge.

NOTE. — *Ver*, *oir* require the direct infinitive, not, as in English, a gerund: *Me vió venir. Le oigo hablar.*

[160.] **THE PREPOSITIONAL INFINITIVE** is either *A.* dependent on other words, or *B.* used independently.

*A.* With the dependent infinitive prepositions are used as follows:

1. *de* (denoting 'source, cause, means') is used after nouns or adjectives usually taking *de*; and after many verbs denoting action, or separation:

<i>Tuvo desgracia de perder su reloj.</i>	He had the misfortune to lose ('of losing') his watch.
<i>Es difícil de alcanzar.</i>	It is hard to attain.
<i>Me alegro de ver á V. bueno.</i>	I am glad to see you well.
<i>Me acuerdo de haber dicho.</i>	I remember having said.
<i>No por eso he dejado de ser lo que antes.</i>	I have not on that account ceased to be what I was.
<i>Desistió de perseguir á sus contrarios.</i>	He desisted from persecuting his opponents.

Notice also: *acabar de* 'complete' (lit. 'come to a head with'), 'just have (done a thing)'; *es (era etc.) de* 'it is (was) to': e. g. *Acaba de salir* 'He has just gone out.' *Es de desear que sea pronto* 'It is to be hoped that it will be soon.'

2. *á* is used after adjectives or verbs to denote direction (external or mental) towards, application, purpose :

<i>Se esfuerza á hacerlo.</i>	He makes an effort to do it.
<i>No estás tu obligado á saber latin.</i>	Thou art not obliged to know Latin.
<i>Vamos á dar un paseo.</i>	Let us go and take a walk.
<i>Aprenden á escribir.</i>	They learn to write.
<i>Echóse á correr.</i>	He began (lit. threw himself) to run.
<i>Vuelve á salir.</i>	He goes out again (lit. returns to going out).

3. *con* expresses 'with':

<i>Se contentó con privarle de la libertad.</i>	He was contented with depriving him of his freedom.
---	---

4. *en*, usually followed by a gerund in sense of 'after, by,' may take the infinitive in other uses :

<i>Pienso en partir.</i>	I am thinking of departing.
<i>Hace V. bien en vender su casa.</i>	You do well in selling your house.

5. *para* denotes purpose and with *estar*, 'about to (happen)':

*Comemos para satisfacer al hambre.* We eat to satisfy our hunger.  
*Estoy para partir.* I am about to depart.

6. *por* denotes motive, result, or with *estar* 'soon to (be done)':

*Trabaja por confundir á su contrario.* He labors to confuse his adversary.  
*Las uvas están por madurar.* The grapes will soon ripen.

*B.* Without any governing word the infinitive with a preposition usually corresponds in English to a gerund or a noun with a preposition. Especially is to be noted the use of *al* (*á el*) to introduce a statement of time or circumstance; and of *con* in sense of 'by, in' with a gerund, or for *aunque*, to introduce a concession:

*Al ver esto.* On seeing this.  
*Al hablar así.* In speaking thus.  
*Al sonar la trompeta.* When the trumpet was sounded.  
*Al romper del día.* At the break of day.  
*Con declarar, se eximió del tormento.* By confessing he escaped torture.  
*Con ser tan antiguo le han postergado.* Though he is so old they have passed him by.

[161.] *Que* is used idiomatically with an infinitive after *tener*, *haber*: *Tengo que hablarte* 'I have something to speak to you about.' *Hay que tener paciencia* 'Patience is necessary.' *No hay que decir* 'It is needless to say.'

### *Infinitive as verb.*

162. The infinitive may be followed by a subject. It is then usually in English rendered by a personal verb, or a noun.

*Al entrar yo en el wagon.* As I entered the car.  
*Al dispuntar el día.* When the day dawned (at the dawn of day).  
*Murió al concluirse la guerra.* He died at the close of the war

**163.** The infinitive may, as in English, be construed with a predicate or object.

**164.** The active infinitive is sometimes to be rendered as a passive: — *Le llevaron á colgar* ‘They took him to be hanged’ (lit. ‘to hanging’). *La muerte deja tu educación sin concluir* ‘Death leaves thy education uncompleted.’

**165.** The infinitive is sometimes used in exclamation: — *Callar!* ‘Hush!’ *¡No correr!* ‘Don’t run!’ *Dirigirse á* ‘Inquire at.’

#### GERUND.

**166.** The gerund is always invariable. It is used with or without *en* ‘in.’ It is often to be rendered in English by ‘in, by, while’ and the gerund in *-ing*, or else by ‘when, as’ and a personal verb.

<i>(En) diciendo esto se despidió.</i>	Saying this he went away.
<i>Haciendo esto muestra su caridad.</i>	In doing this he shows his charity.
<i>Estando comiendo oímos gritar al arma.</i>	While (we were) eating we heard a call to arms.
<i>En habiendo dinero en el bolsillo, se gasta sin miseria.</i>	When one has money in his pocket it is freely spent.

**167.** The gerund is freely used with *estar, ir, andar, continuar, (pro)seguir, quedar* to denote progression:

<i>Está lloviendo.</i>	It is raining.
<i>Se iban reuniendo.</i>	They were gathering.
<i>Continúa nevando.</i>	It keeps on snowing.
<i>Siguió hablando.</i>	He continued speaking.

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

**168.** The past participle is invariable after *haber*. In other cases it agrees with the noun qualified :

<i>Ella ha comido.</i>	She has eaten.
<i>Las hemos alabado.</i>	We have praised them.
<i>Ella es amada.</i>	She is loved.
<i>Ella ha sido amada.</i>	She has been loved.
<i>Los soldados están vencidos.</i>	The soldiers are vanquished.
<i>Tengo comprados dos libros.</i>	I have bought two books (lit. I hold two books bought).
<i>La gitana lleva robados (or ha robado) dos niños.</i>	The gipsy has stolen two children ( <i>lleva</i> = 'has with her').
<i>Con mayor cordialidad de la que traía premeditada.</i>	With greater cordiality than he had expected.
<i>Ella se presentó apoyada en el brazo de su padre.</i>	She came forward leaning on her father's arm.

**169.** The past participle may be used absolutely with a noun or pronoun to denote time and circumstance :

<i>Dicho esto, presentó el rey el papel.</i>	With these words (lit. 'this said') the king presented the paper.
<i>Concluido este negocio, se despidió.</i>	When this negotiation had been concluded he went away.

NOTE.—Such a construction may be emphasized by the use of a preposition of time : — *Después de firmada la paz* 'After peace was signed.' *Antes de dada la orden* 'Before the order had been given.'

**170.** *Para* 'for' is with the participle often to be rendered by 'to be' (= 'fit or intended for') : *Estas providencias no son para propuestas* 'These measures are not to be proposed.'

## XV.

*Indeclinables.*

171. *Acaso* 'forsooth' is often a mere interrogative sign:  
*¿Acaso no me entiende?* Do you not understand me?

172. *Aquí* 'here,' *ahí* 'there' (near the addressed), *allí* 'there' (remote) are used with verbs of rest. With verbs of motion *acá*, *ahí*, *allá* are used in the same sense:

*Aquí está; viene acá.* Here he is; here he comes.  
*Ahí está (va).* He is (goes) there.

NOTE.—*Por aquí* (*ahí*, etc.) means 'this way, here, hereabouts' ('that way' etc.); *de aquí* (*ahí*, etc.) 'from here, hence' ('thence').

173. *Mucho*, *tanto*, *cuanto* modify personal verbs and comparatives; *muy*, *tan*, *cuan* other words:

*Mucho mejor; mucho más.* Much better; much more.  
*Tanto peor.* So much the worse.  
*Muy bueno (bien).* Very good (well).  
*Es muy amado.* He is much loved.  
*Un día tan bello.* So beautiful a day.

174. *Recientemente* 'recently' becomes *reciën* before a participle:  
*Un niño reciën nacido.* A new-born child.

175. *Si* 'if' may be used adverbially to denote surprise ('why!'):  
*Si no he dicho nada.* Why, I did not say anything.

176. *Sí* 'yes' is in indirect discourse preceded by *que*:  
*Digo (creo, pienso) que sí.* I say (believe, think) so.  
*Verdad qué sí.* It is truly so.

NOTE.—*Si* may be strengthened by a following *tal* or *que*: — *¿Lo ve V.?*  
 — *Si tal* (or *Si que lo veo*) 'Do you see it?' — 'I do.'



177. 'Ago, since' are expressed by the impersonal use of *hacer* 'make,' or *haber* 'have':

<i>Hace dos años.</i>	}	Two years ago.
<i>Dos años ha.</i>		
<i>Hacia tres días.</i>	}	(It was) three days ago.
<i>Tres días había.</i>		

178. 'Just, finally, again' (or kindred adverbs) are in Spanish apt to be rendered, as illustrated below, by the aid of *acabar* 'complete, finish,' *llegar* 'arrive,' *volver* 'return':

<i>Acaba de llegar.</i>	He has just come.
<i>Acabó por reirse.</i>	He finally laughed.
<i>Llegó á ser general.</i>	He finally became general.
<i>Volvió á saludar.</i>	He saluted again.
<i>¿Volveremos á vernos?</i>	Shall we meet again?

179. **NEGATION.** About the ordinary use of *no*, alone or with *jamás* etc., and of *ni*, cf. 99. A few special rules are here added.

[180.] *No.*—The construction or use of *no* 'not' is peculiar to Spanish, as compared with English, in the following respects:

a. Without verb it follows the subject: *Yo no* 'Not I.'

b. In indirect discourse it is construed, like *si* 'yes' (176), with *que*: *Digo que no* 'I say no.'

c. It is used **expletively** (1) in *comparisons of difference*, and (2) after various expressions involving a negation (as after negatively construed verbs, or verbs of *fear, doubt, prevention*), especially when the action of the dependent verb (then in the subjunctive) implies some uncertainty:

*Tuvo más dinero que no creía.* He had more money than he thought.

<i>Mejor el trabajo que no la ociosidad.</i>	Work is better than idleness.
<i>Temió no le perdiese el respeto.</i>	He feared he might lose respect for him.
<i>No niego que no séalo cosa de risa.</i>	I do not deny that being a ridiculous thing.
<i>¿Quién duda que V. no me tenga por un hombre loco?</i>	Who doubts that you consider me a fool?

[181.] **Jamás, nunca :**

*a. Jamás* (Lat. *jam magis*) properly means 'ever,' or with *no* 'never.' The latter meaning, however, it has also (by ellipsis) without *no*, when placed before the personal verb (except in indirect questions or after exclusive expressions), and when used alone :

<i>¿Ha jamás visto V. tal cosa?</i>	Have you <i>ever</i> seen the like of this?
<i>No sé si jamás volveré.</i>	I do not know if I <i>ever</i> shall return.
<i>Sin abusar jamás la licencia.</i>	Without <i>ever</i> abusing the permission.
<i>No la he visto jamás. }</i>	I have <i>never</i> seen her.
<i>Jamás la he visto. }</i>	
<i>¿Cuándo vendrá? Jamás.</i>	When will he come? <i>Never</i> .

*b. Nunca* (Lat. *nunquam*) regularly means 'never.' Yet, like *jamás*, it requires *no* when (more exceptionally) it follows the verb. Like *jamás* it may also mean 'ever' in constructions where an expletive negative is required (180, *c*) :

<i>Nunca la he visto. }</i>	I have <i>never</i> seen her.
<i>No la he visto nunca. }</i>	
<i>Hoy está peor que nunca.</i>	To-day he is worse than <i>ever</i> .

- Dudo que el rey le haya nunca visto.* I doubt whether the king has ever seen him.
- Sin que diga nunca lo que piensa.* Without his ever saying what he thinks.

NOTE. — *Jamás* may be used pleonastically to emphasize *nunca* or *por (para) siempre*: — *Nunca jamás lo haré yo* 'Never shall I do it.' *Por siempre jamás me acordaré de esto* 'I shall forever remember this.' *Me ha quitado para siempre jamás* 'He has left me forever.'

[182.] *Tampoco* 'as little' is equivalent to 'neither' before a verb, and to 'either' after a negative: — *Tampoco quiero ese libro* or *No quiero ese libro tampoco* 'Neither do I wish that book' or 'I do not wish that book either.' *¿Quiere V. este libro? — No. — Ese? — Tampoco* (Neither = No).

### Conjunctions.

183. *Pero, mas: sino.* — *Pero* and *mas* introduce a sentence. All three are used adversatively, but *sino* only in an affirmative clause emphasizing by contrast a preceding negation:

- No es rico, pero es bueno.* He is not rich, but he is good.
- No lo digo en broma, sino muy por lo serio.* I do not say it jestingly, but in all earnestness.

## XVI.

### Arrangement of the Sentence.

184. The arrangement of the sentence is in Spanish very free, and largely dependent on emphasis and euphony.

185. To the more definite rules already given (under the head of Pronouns, Adjectives, etc.) may be added here:

[186.] **THE SUBJECT-NOUN** follows its verb in **questions** (unless introduced by an interrogative pronoun), in **optative** or **imperative** phrases not introduced by *que*. It may optionally be placed after the verb also in other sentences. — Thus :

<i>¿Cuándo piensa partir tu padre ?</i>	When does thy father expect to depart?
[But <i>¿Qué vapor ha llegado ?</i>	Which steamer has arrived?]
<i>¿Quiera Dios !</i>	God grant !
<i>¿Séale la tierra leve !</i>	May the ground be light over him !
<i>El discípulo aprende (or Aprende el d.).</i>	The pupil learns.

[187.] The verb and its object (unless extended), and the members of a periphrastic verb-phrase are rarely separated :

<i>¿Saben su lección los discípulos ?</i>	Do the pupils know their lesson?
<i>¿Ha partido tu hermano ?</i>	Has thy brother departed?

---

EXERCISE XXVI.

---

## VERSIFICATION.

---

**188.** The main features of Spanish versification are those explained below.

**189. RHYTHM.** The rhythm of the Spanish verse is determined not by a regulated sequence of accentual beats or prosodial quantities, but, mainly as in French, by the fixed **syllabic number** of corresponding verse-lines, as described in 190, and the **free harmony** of their structure.

NOTE. — The Spanish verse, though not subject to that regular and sustained rhythmical pulsation which is characteristic — in a very different way — of classical and Germanic poetry, ordinarily suggests, however, a prevalently iambic or trochaic movement, which at times may even be quite pronounced. The prosodial significance of each verse-line usually requires their final words to have a natural rhetorical tone. The turn of the poetical phrase is of course in Spanish, as in other tongues, in various respects distinguished from that of prose.

**190. NUMBER OF SYLLABLES.** Each verse-line must contain a definite number of syllables according to the structure of the verse. Meeting vowel-sounds between words are usually uttered as diphthongs and counted as forming **one syllable** (*de otro* = *deô|tro*, 2 syll.; *que ha* = *queâ*, 1 syll., *h* being silent). — Ex. :

*Por | en|trê|u|nas | ma|tas, | } 6 syll.*  
*Se|gui|do | de | pe|rros,*

Gi ta ni ca,   que   de her mo sa	}	8 syll.
te   pue den   dar   pa ra bie nes		
por   lo   que   de   pie dra   tie nes		
te   lla ma^el   mun do   Pre cio sa		

Señor mio	}	4 syll.
de^ese brio		
ligereza		
y destreza		
no me^espanto		
que^otro tanto		

Suelo hacer y^d caso mds } 7 syll.

NOTE 1. — In counting the syllables of a verse-line, diphthongs and dissyllabics are to be distinguished according to 10, a. b. Yet, diphthongs (especially with final tone, as *uā*, *iā*, etc., and also others) are not seldom made dissyllabic, and, vice versa, dissyllabics (especially with initial tone, as *e-a*, *i-a*, etc.) sometimes diphthongal (*ea*, *iā*, etc.). It is customary to mark the initial of a dissolved diphthong with diæresis ("). — Ex., diphth. as dissyll.: (tonic) *quiêto*, *puntial*, *desçar*, *variado*; (atonic) *piêdad*, *cüidad*; — dissyll. as diphth.: *sea*, *desea*, *seria*, *día*.

NOTE 2. — In external hiatus, even three or four concurrent vowels of two or more words may blend into one syllable: *su hui|da*; *au|sen|cia y; diô au|sen|cia*; *cuan|do d al|gu|no*; *que d Euro|pa*; *se|me|jan|te he he|ri|do*; *bru|to y d un |a|ve*. Punctuation or sense or arbitrary taste exceptionally prevent the contraction of meeting vowels into a diphthong.

In declamation, taste decides how much prominence should be given to vowels in hiatus. *I* and *u* are often, and *y* always, consonantized (= Engl. *y*, *v*, *y*) before another vowel.

NOTE 3. — As in English, the length of the lines may vary considerably even within the same verse or poem. The most common lines are those containing 8 or 11 syllables. Where lines vary in the same poem, the verse is



named according to the number of syllables contained in the leading lines with unaccented final: e. g.

<i>No digo que ha de querer</i>	7	} octosyllabic.
<i>por fuerza la que agradece,</i>	8	
<i>pero, Cintia, me parece</i>	8	
<i>que está cerca de caer.</i>	7	

**191. RHYME, ASSONANCE, AND BLANK VERSE.** The verse-lines may be harmonized with each other in various combinations by the use of **rhyme** or, especially in older poetry, **assonance** (accordance of their last tone-vowels only). **Blank lines** are also common, especially in combination with rhymed or assonated. — Ex.:

a. Rhyme:

*No digo que ha de querer  
por fuerza la que agradece,  
pero, Cintia, me parece  
que está cerca de caer.*

b. Assonance:

*Tu pelo y tus ojitos  
Me gustan en verdad  
Me gustan tus mejillas  
De nieve y de coral.*

c. Blank verse and rhyme:

*¡España, España! amada patria mía!  
patria de los valientes  
que el largo oprobio de tu faz borrarón!  
cuando tu afecto de mi pecho salga,  
mi cantar abatido  
sepúltese en el polvo del olvido.*

d. Blank verse, assonance, and rhyme:

*Dulce madre mía  
quién no llorará,*

*aunque tenga el pecho  
 como un pedernal,  
 y no dará voces  
 viendo marchitar  
 los más verdes años  
 de mi mocedad:  
 dejadme llorar  
 orillas de mar.*

NOTE 1. — Rhymes are either monosyllabic (masculine): *mar: par*; — *nds: jamás*; — *don: mansion*; — *querer: caer*; or dissyllabic (feminine): *amada: adorada*, etc.

NOTE 2. — The assonance usually occurs on corresponding syllables in the harmonized words (*vida: risa; cuesta: pesa; oráculo: máximo*). Exceptionally an antepenult may be in assonance with a penult (*tantas: lágrimas*).

**192. STROPHES AND POEMS.** A certain number of verse-lines combined so as to form a unit by themselves make a strophe, several strophes a poem.

Among a great variety of strophic combinations may be noted the following three, each with 11 syllables and variously distributed rhymes, viz.: the *terzins* (with a free number of strophes of three lines each and a final strophe of one line); the *sonnet* (with one strophe of 8 and one of 6 lines), and the *stanza* (with a free number of strophes, each of 8 lines embodying one thought or statement, culminating in the last two).

## SPANISH WORDS IN ENGLISH.

---

**193.** In the sixteenth century Spain occupied a prominent commercial, political, and literary position. Her language and literature were then cultivated in polite society in Europe. The poetical forms of her writers were imitated by Sidney and others in England. Yet, this prominence of Spain was of too transient a nature to secure to the Spanish language anything like the influence gained a century later by the French, especially in England, whose idiom was already half French.

Altogether the English vocabulary contains only a trifle over one hundred words borrowed directly from the Spanish. These are chiefly: — (a) names of foreign products and animals (for the most part borrowed by the Spanish itself from various native idioms): e. g. *anchovy, banana, sarsaparilla, tobacco; alligator, buffalo, condor, mosquito*, etc.; — (b) nautical terms such as *commodore, flotilla, cargo, embargo*, etc.; — (c) special Spanish appellatives like *alguazil, don, hidalgo, junta, armada*, etc.

**194.** Although nearly all these Anglo-Spanish words have deviated more or less in pronunciation from their models, yet about one-fourth or (waiving the occasional use of a double consonant where Spanish has a single) one-third of them are orthographically unchanged. The more common among these are: *alpaca, armada, armadillo, banana, buf(f)alo, cacao, can(n)ibal, cargo, chocolate, condor, dragoman, embargo, filibuster, gal(l)con, garrote, guano, guerilla, hidalgo, junta, lilac, matador, merino, mosquito, negro, pec(c)adillo, platina, talisman*.

The remainder have changed but slightly, as:— (a) by dropping the final: e. g. *cigar* (Sp. *cigarro*), *cask* (*casco*), *cork* (*corcho*), *courtesan* (*cortesana*), *galliard* (*gallarda*), *minaret* (*minarete*);— (b) by altering it: *anchovy* (*anchova*), *bravado* (*bravada*), *canoe* (*canoa*), *grandee* (*grande*), *renegade* (*renegado*), *tomato* (*tomate*), *tornado* (*tornado*), *ultramarine* (*ultramarino*), etc.;— (c) by other variations: *alligator* (*el lagarto*), *bastinado* (*bastonada*), *commodore* (*comendador*), *disembogue* (*desembocar*), *duenna* (*dueña*), *filigree* (*filigrana*), *flamingo* (*flamenco*), *hurricane* (*huracan*), *potato* (*patata*), *quadroon* (*cuarteron*), *savanna* (*sabana*), *tabacco* (*tobaco*), *sherry* (*Xeres*,  $x = j$ ), *vanilla* (*vainilla*).

**195.** Indirectly English owes some forty words to Spanish, having borrowed them from other tongues (esp. French), which had them directly (though not ultimately) from Spanish: e. g. *barricade*, *bizarre*, *creole*, *hazard*, *paragon*, *spaniel*, etc.

EXERCISES.





## EXERCISES.

### I. Vowels.

Pronounce consonants in this exercise as in English, only *rr* more trilled. Accent words without accent-mark on the penult when they end in a vowel, otherwise on the final syllable.

**a**: *ama, amaba, rata, amar, cantar*. — **e**: *breve, mesa, padre, elefante; es, testa, ventar; este, escuela, elemental*. — **i**: *fibra, mitela, timbre*. — **o**: *no, pobre, molin, amo, visto; con, fonda, contar, corredor; torno, olor, consonante, contento*. — **u**: *una busca, pluma, gusto; guerra, guitarra, guia, que, quema, quinto, quintar; argüir, antigüedad*. — **y**: *y, muy, voy; yo, yerba, arguyo*. — **vowel-compounds**: (*diphth.*) *bien, diablo, causa, aula, cuanto, ciento, suntuoso, treinta, rey*; (*dissyll.*) *día, alegría, fluctúa, maestro, paón, aldea, país, oír*.

### II. Consonants.

**b**: *bien, bebe, tubo, barón*. — **c**: *casa, coro, crema, trocar; ceta, cima, bacía, cecinar; acción, faccioso*. — **ch**: *cha, muchacho, leche, chico*. — **d**: *dorar, amado, dudo*. — **g**: *gala, gato, gordo, gloria, guerra; general, gitano, genio, registro, gegén*. — **h**: *hablar; huevo*. — **j**: *jamás, joven, mujer, ajeno, alhaja*. — **ll**: *calle, batalla, llama, allí*. — **ñ**: *año, señor, ceñer, niña*. — **qu**: *quedar, quinto*. — **r**: *rama, ruego, en-redo, alrota, honra; arar, piedra, tierra*. — **s**: *es, rosa*. — **z**: *raza, mozo, azul, feliz, yazgo*.

### III. Articles.

*el padre* 'the father';

" *hijo* 'the son';

*la madre* 'the mother'

" *hija* 'the daughter'

<i>el hermano</i> 'the brother';	<i>la hermana</i> 'the sister'
" <i>amigo</i> 'the friend';	" <i>amiga</i> 'the friend' (f.)
" <i>hombre</i> 'the man';	" <i>mujer</i> 'the woman'
" <i>cuerpo</i> 'the body';	<i>el</i> (f.) <i>alma</i> 'the soul'
" <i>bueno</i> ( <i>buen</i> ) 'the good';	<i>la buena</i> 'the good'

*amo* 'I love' (pers. pronoun usually omitted, unless emphatic).

*es* 'is' (inherently);      *está* 'is' (accidentally).

*y* (or *é* before *i-*, *hi-*) 'and';      *aquí* 'here'

1. Usually Spanish requires *á* before a definite **direct object** denoting a *person* or *personified* thing: § 110.

2. Where the sense is clear *el* (etc.) may be used for a possessive ('my, his,' etc.).

1. *El*<sup>1</sup> *hermano y la hermana*. 2. *Los hijos* (*s* plural sign) *y las hijas*. 3. *El alma del hombre*. 4. *Amo al padre y á la madre* (why *á*, *al*, and def. art.?). 5. *Un buen amigo*. 6. *Una buena mujer*. 7. *El padre es bueno*. 8. *El buen hombre está aquí*. 9. *Hijos ó hijas*.

1. The son and the daughter. 2. The brothers and the sisters. 3. I love the son and the daughter. 4. The man's soul and body ('The soul, etc., of the man'). 5. The woman's good soul. 6. I love the good man. 7. The brother is good and the daughter is good.

#### IV. Plural of Nouns.

<i>el niño</i> 'the child (little boy)';	<i>la niña</i> 'the (little) girl'
" <i>rey</i> 'the king';	" <i>reina</i> 'the queen'
" <i>libro</i> 'the book';	" <i>carta</i> 'the letter; map (chart)'
" <i>papel</i> 'the paper';	" <i>pluma</i> 'the feather, pen'
" <i>pie</i> 'the foot';	" <i>mano</i> 'the hand'

<sup>1</sup> Items in heavy type to be especially noted and explained.

<i>el árbol</i> 'the tree'	<i>la flor</i> 'the flower'
" <i>rubi</i> 'the ruby'	" <i>perla</i> 'the pearl'
" <i>banco</i> 'the bench'	" <i>silla</i> 'the chair'
" <i>ferro-carril</i> 'the railroad'	" <i>estación</i> 'the station'
" <i>gentilhombre</i> 'the gentleman, squire'	" <i>señora</i> 'the lady' (esp. married)
" <i>señor</i> 'the gentleman' (in addr. 'sir')	" <i>señorita</i> 'the young lady'
<i>son</i> 'are' (inherently); . . . .	<i>están</i> 'are' (accidentally)
<i>he</i> 'I have' (auxiliary); . . . .	<i>tengo</i> 'I have (= possess)'
<i>también</i> 'also';	<i>tienen</i> '(they) have'; <i>visto</i> 'seen'

I. Nouns with the def. art. may have a **definite** or a **generic** sense: *los niños* 'the children' or 'children (generally),' according as it is used.

1. *Los niños son buenos* (s pl. sign), *y las niñas son también buenas* (-as fem. pl.).
2. *Tengo libros y cartas, rubies y perlas.*
3. *Los pies y las manos.*
4. *Amo á las niñas; están aquí.*
5. *Los reyes* (two meanings) *están aquí.*
6. *Los árboles y las flores son los niños de la naturaleza* ('nature').
7. *Señor, he visto los ferro-carriles.*
8. *Los gentileshombres del rey.*

1. I love little boys and also little girls. 2. I have pens and paper. 3. I have seen trees and flowers, and I have flowers. 4. The king and the queen (*express in two ways*) have rubies and pearls. 5. I have hands and feet. 6. Good little girls (*generally, hence def. art.*) are pearls. 7. Women love flowers. 8. The man's papers are here.

### V. Gender of Nouns.

Put the definite article before: — *hombre* 'man,' *mujer* 'woman,' *caballo* 'horse,' *yegua* 'mare,' *libro* 'book,' *cerro* 'hill,' *silla* 'chair,' *café* 'coffee,' *agua* 'water,' *sofá* 'sofa,' *idioma* 'idiom,' *drama* 'drama,' *dolor* 'pain,' *virtud* 'virtue,' *nación*

'nation,' *libertad* 'liberty,' *acción* 'deed,' *especie* 'species,' *muchedumbre* 'throng,' *mano* 'hand,' *nao* 'ship,' *dia* 'day,' *mapa* 'map'; (30. 1) *lunes* 'Monday,' *manzano* 'apple-tree,' *pera* 'pear,' *nuez* 'nut,' *Etna* 'Etna,' *Portugal* 'Portugal,' *España* 'Spain.'

## VI. Qualifying Suffixes.

<i>el hombr(ach)ón</i> 'the big man'	<i>la mujeracha</i> 'the large woman'
" <i>hombrezuelo</i> } 'the small man'	" <i>mujerona</i> 'the bad woman'
" <i>hombrecillo</i> }	" <i>mujercilla</i> 'the hussy'
" <i>muchacho</i> 'the boy'	" <i>muchacha</i> 'the girl'
" <i>muchachillo</i> 'the little boy'	" <i>muchachilla</i> 'the little girl'
" <i>hermanito</i> 'the little brother'	" <i>hermanita</i> 'the little sister'
" <i>narigón</i> ( <i>nariz</i> , f., 'nose') 'the big nose'	" <i>boca</i> 'the mouth'
" <i>piecito</i> } 'the little foot'	" <i>bocaza</i> 'the big mouth'
" <i>piecillo</i> }	" <i>manecita</i> } 'the little hand'
" <i>arbolito</i> 'the little tree'	" <i>manecilla</i> }
" <i>fusil</i> 'the gun, musket'	" <i>florecita</i> 'the little flower'
" <i>fusilazo</i> 'the musket-shot, — blow'	" <i>puñalada</i> ( <i>puñal</i> , m., 'dagger') 'the dagger-thrust'
" <i>bastón</i> 'the cane'	
" <i>bastonazo</i> 'the cane-rap'	" <i>bastonada</i> 'the cane-rap'
<i>he</i> 'I have' (only auxil.) <i>has</i> 'thou hast'	<i>ha</i> 'he (she, it) has'
<i>tengo</i> 'I have (hold)' <i>tienes</i> 'thou hast'	<i>tiene</i> 'he (etc.) has'
<i>hablo</i> 'I speak' <i>hablas</i> 'thou speakest'	<i>habla</i> 'he (etc.) speaks'
<i>aquel</i> (f. <i>-lla</i> , pl. <i>-llos</i> , <i>-llas</i> ) 'that'; <i>su</i> (pl. <i>sus</i> ) 'his, her.'	

**No**, 'not' is placed before the verb.

1. *El hombrón* (*hombrachón*) *tiene un fusilazo y una puñalada.*
2. *Hablo del hermanito y de las hermanitas.* 3. *Tiene la manecita de la muchachilla.* 4. *Habla del narigón de aquel hombrecillo.*
5. *Tiene aquella muchacha (muchachilla) la florecita* 6. *Su muchacho tiene un pistoletazo* (fr. *pistola* 'pistol': 36).

1. The big man is the little boy's father. 2. His little brother has a pistol-shot (cf. sentence 6, above) in (*en*) his foot. 3. It

is a blow of a cane. 4. She has (holds) little flowers in her dainty hand. 5. He speaks of her little sister's big mouth. 6. That worthless woman is not good. 7. I speak of those little trees.

### VII. *Adjectives.*

<i>el maestro</i> 'the master'	<i>la maestra</i> 'the mistress'	
" <i>discipulo</i> 'the pupil' (f. -la.)	" <i>pupila</i> 'the ward'	
" <i>caballo</i> 'the horse'	" <i>yegua</i> 'the mare'	
" <i>jardín</i> 'the garden'	" <i>casa</i> 'the house'	
" <i>manzano</i> 'the apple-tree'	" <i>manzana</i> 'the apple' (30. 1)	
" <i>pan</i> 'the bread'	" <i>leche</i> 'the milk'	
" <i>ejercicio</i> 'the exercise'	" <i>lección</i> 'the lesson'	
" <i>idioma</i> 'the language'	" <i>lengua</i> 'the tongue, language'	
<i>bueno</i> 'good'	<i>diligente</i> 'diligent'	<i>español</i> 'Spanish'
<i>malo</i> 'bad'	<i>perezoso</i> 'lazy'	<i>inglés</i> 'English'
<i>bello, hermoso</i> 'beautiful'	<i>feliz</i> 'happy'	<i>alemán</i> 'German'
<i>feo</i> 'ugly'	<i>infeliz</i> 'unhappy'	<i>belga</i> 'Belgian'
<i>lindo, bonito</i> 'pretty'	<i>fácil</i> 'easy'	<i>nacional</i> 'national'
<i>chico</i> 'small'; noun, 'little boy' (f. 'girl')	<i>difícil</i> 'difficult'	<i>burlón</i> 'roguish'
<i>pequeño</i> 'small'	<i>blanco</i> 'white'	<i>rico, ricacho</i> , 'rich, very rich'
<i>viejo</i> 'old'	<i>negro</i> 'black'	<i>fuerte, fortuzuelo</i> 'strong, not very strong?'
<i>joven</i> 'young'; noun, m. or f. 'young man or woman'	<i>verde</i> 'green'	
	<i>colorado</i> 'ruddy'	
	<i>pero</i> 'but'	<i>quiero</i> 'I like.'

For the place of adjectives cf. 113.

1. *Los padres son buenos y las madres son también buenas.*
2. *El buen padre y la buena madre.* 3. *Los caballos son blancos.*
4. *Las buenas manzanas de aquel árbol son pequeñas.* 5. *La gran (15. b) manzana hermosa.* 6. *Quiero a los discípulos diligentes.*
7. *La leche es blanca.* 8. *La linda niña es diligente, pero aquellos (-llas) jóvenes son perezosos (-sas).* 9. *La lección es fácil, pero el ejercicio es difícil.* 10. *La lengua española es más fácil que la lengua alemana.* 11. *Aquel mal caballo es mejor<sup>1</sup> (peor)*

<sup>1</sup> Words not found in the vocabularies are already explained in this Grammar.

*que la yegua.* 12. *Los Ingleses son más blancos que los Españoles.* 13. *Aquel hombre es menos feliz que su feliz hermana.* 14. *Tengo un discípulo bonísimo y diligentísimo.* 15. *Aquel viejo hombre tiene más de seis ('six') casas.* 16. *Su joven pupila es ricacha (or riquísima).* 17. *La bonita chica es fuerte, pero el chico es fortzuelo.*

1. His horses are white, and the mare is also white. 2. The pupil (m. and f.) is diligent. 3. His pretty sister is happy. 4. Those ruddy apples are very good. 5. The beautiful gardens are green, and the pretty houses are white. 6. I speak the Spanish language (*express 'language' in two ways: it precedes 'Spanish'*). 7. The lesson is more difficult than the exercise. 8. That lazy little boy is the worst. 9. That pretty girl (little girl) is very good. 10. That bad boy is less happy than his diligent sister. 11. Those houses are very white. 12. The young girl (*two ways*) has more than six apples. 13. He has more bread than milk. 14. Those old men are very rich (*three ways*). 15. His little sister (*two ways*) is ailing (46).

### VIII. Numerals.

*el tío* 'the uncle'

" *año* 'the year'

" *mes* 'the month'

" *día* 'the day'

" *minuto* 'the minute'

" *cuarto* 'the room'

*la tía* 'the aunt'

" *estación* 'the season'

" *semana* 'the week'

" *noche* 'the night'

" *hora* 'the hour'

" *sala* 'the hall'

*tenemos* 'we have (or hold)'    *tenéis* 'you have'    *tienen* 'they have'

*hay* 'there is (or are)'

*en* 'in'

1. *Su tío tiene dos casas; en la una hay diez cuartos y tres salas.* 2. *Su hermana tiene cinco niños.* 3. *Una semana tiene siete días; un mes treinta; y el año tre(s)cientos sesenta y cinco días.* 4. *En su jardín hay veintiocho árboles.* 5. *Mil cuatro-*



*cientos noventa y dos.* 6. *La muchacha es la primera, y el muchacho el quinto.*

1. His aunt has four sons and two daughters. 2. The day has 24 hours and the hour 60 minutes. 3. There are four seasons in the year. 4. 1891; 1525. 5. The first and the third hour; the twelfth month. 6. A day and a half; (one) half (of) the day (51).

### IX. Personal Pronouns.

<i>amar</i> '(to) love'	<i>dar</i> '(to) give'	<i>querer</i> '(to) wish, like, love,
Pres. Ind.:		'want,
<i>amo</i> 'I love'	<i>doy</i> 'I give'	<i>quiero</i> 'I wish' (etc.)
<i>amas</i> 'thou lovest'	<i>das</i> 'thou givest'	<i>quieres</i> 'thou wishest'
<i>ama</i> 'he, she, it loves'	<i>da</i> 'he (etc.) gives'	<i>quiere</i> 'he (etc.) wishes'
Imperat.:		
<i>ama</i> 'love!'	<i>da</i> 'give!'	<i>quiere</i> 'wish!'
<i>quedar</i> 'to burn'	} conj. like <i>amar</i> ;	<i>ver</i> 'see'; <i>gracias</i> , 'thanks';
<i>trabajar</i> 'to work'		<i>mismo</i> , 'self.'

Observe, according to § 59:—

*se* (for *le*) *lo*: it to him (to her, to it).  
*se* (" ") *la*: her " " (" " ").  
*se* (" *les*) *lo*: it to them (m. or f.); etc.

1. A Spaniard calls every object, whether living or not, 'he' or 'she,' never 'it' (which he uses only for adjectives, phrases, or in pointing to things without naming them). He will say: 'I have *him* (viz., the book), *her* (viz., the flower), *them* (*los* or *las*, viz., the books, the flowers).'


2. The meaning of the atonic dat. pronoun may be made more distinct or emphatic by using also (as is frequently done) the tonic form with *d* after the verb, or before the atonic (unless appended). Thus, for *le* (dat.) *doy*, which might mean 'I give him (or her, it, you)' may be used, according to the intended sense *le doy d él* ('him,' *d ella* 'her,' *d ello* 'it,' *d Usted* 'you'); or *d el le doy* (etc.). So likewise, *me doy d mi*, etc.

3. *Usted* 'you' is ordinarily used at least once in every sentence.

1. *Yo trabajo, pero él habla.* (Are *yo*, *él* necessary?) 2. *Le amo*; (Give case and possible meanings of *le*. Also other con-

structions to make them clear or emphatic) ; *le amas* ; **los ama** (other constructions for *los*). 3. *Habla de mí, de él, de ellas*. 4. *Trabaja conmigo, con ella*. 5. **Usted** (or *V.*) *tiene un buen libro*. 6. **Le doy á V.** *la flor* (or *á V. le doy la flor*). 7. **Le doy mil gracias**. 8. **Dame una buena pluma**. 9. *Tienes una florecita (un buen fusil), dámela (dámelo : accent?)*. 10. *Quiero darle* (meanings? constructions?) *libros* ; *quiere darles libros*. 11. *Quiere trabajar contigo*. 12. *Amándole, habla con ella*. 13. *Tiene un bastón, me le* (or ?) *da* ; **os le da**. 14. *Tienes una carta, dámela ; dánosla*. 15. *Dándonoslos ; dándolesnos ; dándomela ; dándome* (possible meanings?). 16. *Tengo el papel, se* (59 ; possible meanings and renderings?) *lo* (or ?) *doy*. 17. **Se los da á ellos**. 18. **Se le doy á él** (*á ella, á ellos, á ellas, á V.*). 19. **Dásele** (or ?). 20. *Tengo unas flores, quiero dárselos á ella*. 21. *Le quiero á V.* 22. *V. es muy bueno* (or *bueno* acc'g to the gender of *V.*) ; *VV. son muy buenos* (or *buenos*). 23. *Se olvida*. 24. **Se ha quemado**. **Se ha quemado V. ?** 24. **Habla de sí , di sí mismo**.

1. He loves her ; I love them (*m.*) ; you love us. 2. He speaks of me, of you, and of her. 3. He works with me and with her. 4. We work, but *he does not work* (= 'not works'). 5. I give you (use double form) a good book and good pens. 6. You give me a pen, and I render you thanks. 7. Give us (some) milk and bread. 8. I wish to see them, and to work with them. 9. Loving her, I wish to see *her* and render her a thousand thanks. 10. Here (is) the book ; I give it to you ; I give it to her ; I give it to them. 11. I have five apples, and I gave them to you : I give them to him (to her) ; I give them to them. 12. He loves himself ; they love each other (91.2).

 Though a mastery of the ordinary grammar forms, with sufficient exercises to aid in their assimilation, is preparation enough for beginning intelligent reading, yet as many desire also some practice in composition, and

some familiarity with the most ordinary phrases of every-day use, additional exercises in small print are for their benefit given from this point on. For words, consult the vocabulary at the end of the book.

*hace* 'he (she, it) makes or does'; 'it is,' referring to weather.

3. Conjugate verbs in *ar* like *amar*, above.

4. Verbs in *ar* form the partic. in *-ado*: *am-ar*, *am-ado*, loved.

"	"	-er	}	"	"	"	"	"	"	-ido	:	{	<i>quer-er</i> , <i>-ido</i> ,	wished, etc.
"	"	-ir	}	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	:	{	<i>viv-ir</i> , <i>-ido</i> ,	lived.

1. She has spoken to me of you. 2. I do not have (*expressed only by* 'have not') the paper, I have given it to you. 3. She shows him (her, them) the drawings. 4. She has received him cordially, but he does not want ('wants not') to speak to him. 5. It is evident that he speaks of me and not of her. 6. Here is the book; I have given it to him (her, them, you, *use both tonic and atonic form*). 7. I am looking for ('seek,' with dat.) the servant, but I do not find him; I am looking for ('seek,' acc.) the cane, but I do not find it. 8. He wants it, but I do not want it. 9. She calls herself Fanny, and he calls himself Charles. 10. Do you wish to come with me, or with her? 11. My brother is angry with him, because he makes himself ridiculous to her. 12. He teaches her (him, them, you) Spanish (*def. art.*). 13. He does not wish to tell me the truth; he does not wish to tell it to us. 14. She has not promised it to him (*aton. and ton.*). 15. Here is the book; I have given it to her (*aton. and ton.*), to them, to you. 16. I like you (*f. dat.*), and I give you what I have not given him. 17. That man loves himself, and always speaks of himself.

## SALUTATIONS.

( <i>Tenga V.</i> ) <i>buenos días, buenas tardes,</i> <i>buenas noches, Señor!</i>	Good-morning, good afternoon, good evening, sir! ( <i>Tenga</i> , 'Have'; <i>Tener</i> , cf. vocab.)
¿ <i>Como está</i> (or <i>lo pasa</i> , or <i>se halla</i> ) <i>V.?</i>	How are you (do you do, etc.)?
<i>Muy</i> ( <i>Medianamente</i> ) <i>bien, gracias</i> or <i>para servir á V. Tal cual.</i>	Very (Middling) well, thank you. So so.
<i>Me alegro saberlo.</i>	I am glad to know it.
<i>Estoy algo indispuerto, me duele la</i> <i>cabeza.</i>	I am somewhat indisposed, I have the headache.
<i>Lo siento mucho.</i>	I am very sorry.
<i>Quede</i> (or <i>Vaya</i> to one leaving) <i>V. con</i> <i>Dios!</i>	Good-bye!

## X. Possessives.

<i>el carácter</i> 'the character'	<i>la disposición</i> 'the disposition'	
" <i>coraje</i> 'the courage'	" <i>intrepidez</i> 'the intrepidity'	
" <i>mérito</i> 'the merit'	" <i>virtud</i> 'the virtue'	
" <i>recuerdo</i> 'the remembrance'	" <i>memoria</i> 'the memory'	
<i>valiente</i> 'brave, strong'	<i>virtuoso</i> 'virtuous'	<i>caro</i> 'dear, costly'
<i>intrépido</i> 'intrepid'	<i>meritorio</i> 'meritorious'	<i>querido</i> 'dear, loved'

The possessive agrees with the object possessed (121).

1. *Mi querido hermano y el tuyo.* 2. *Su* (five possible meanings) *hermana*; (or for distinction, *su h. de él, de ella, de ellos, de ellas, de V.*: cf. 123). 3. *La disposición de mis hijos y de los suyos; de mis hijas y de las suyas es buena.* 4. *Habla de vuestro mérito y de vuestras virtudes.* 5. (*Yo*) *amo á mi cara madre; amo á sus hijas* (or *á las hijas de él, etc.*, cf. sent. 2). 6. *Doy pan á sus intrépidos niños y al mío.* 7. *Mi querido amigo* or *Querido amigo mío* (in address). 8. *Es un amigo mío* (obs. 'of mine'). 9. *Unos amigos suyos.* 10. *El caballo blanco es suyo.*

1. His good sister and mine; his brave brother and mine; his dear brothers and mine. 2. The memory of his intrepidity and of yours; of her courage and of theirs. 3. I speak of thy virtues and of hers, of thy character and of hers. 4. He speaks of our dear sisters and of yours. 5. Give that great book to your uncle and mine. 6. The remembrance of his good disposition and of hers is dear to me (âtonic). 7. My dear friend. 8. A friend of mine is here. 9. He is in our house. 10. The milk is his. The lazy boy is his, not mine.

*han* 'they have';                      *son* 'they are';                      *dicho* 'said, told.'  
*hace* 'he (she, it) makes, does'; 'it (there) is,' refer. to weather.

*repas-ar* 'to repeat' { *-a*, Imperat., 'repeat (thou)'  
                                   *-ad*, " " (ye)'  
                                   *-e*, Subjunct., " (you=your honor)'.

1. Use *el . . . de Usted* (or, rather more elegantly, *su . . . de Usted*) for 'your' whenever *su* might be unclear: 'I have his paper and your pen,' *tengo su papel, y la (or su) pluma de V.*

1. My uncle cares for her support and education. 2. His sister has lost her son and her daughter. 3. She has not taken her hat, but yours. 4. Repeat your lesson, children! 5. Repeat your lesson, sir! 6. Charles is an acquaintance of mine. 7. Do you have your cane? No, sir, I have your cane. 8. My friend and my brothers have spoken of you. 9. The chestnut horse is his. 10. It is my fault that I did not come ('have not come') yesterday. 11. No, it is my fault, and not yours. 12. He is a neighbor of ours ('our') and of the Mexican minister's ('minister'). 13. My brother has come to ask you for ('to ask you,' *dat.*) a book of his. 14. They have spoken of our friend and of yours. 15. She has told you that the houses are hers and not theirs.

## THANKS.

*Muchas* (or *mil*, or *muchísimas*) Many (very many) thanks.  
*gracias.*

*Le doy* (pres. of *dar*, 'give') *gracias.* I thank you.

*Quedo á V. muy agradecido.* I am much obliged to you.

*Agradezco mucho el favor que V. me hace.* I am very thankful for the favor you do me.

*Es V. muy cortés (galdn, cumplido).* You are very kind (polite, courteous).

*No háy de qué.* Don't mention it. You are welcome.

XI. *Demonstratives.*

*mucho* 'much'                      *muy* 'very'                      *pobre* 'poor'  
*leído* 'read' (part.)                      *parece* appears, seems.

1. **Este** hombre es más fuerte que ese. 2. **Esta** casa es más grande que esa, **aquella** mucho más grande. 3. **Estos** libros son mejores que aquellos. 4. Habla de **aquellas** casas blancas. 5. **Tengo** este libro y **el** de mi pobre amigo; **estos** libros y **los** de mis pobres amigos. 6. **Aquel** muchachillo es muy bueno. 7. ¿Ha leído V. **esto**? 8. **Eso** parece imposible. 9. **Aquello** no es su opinión. 10. **Aquella** no es su opinión.

1. This boy is poorer than that one; this girl is prettier than that one. 2. These pens are better than those. 3. I spoke of my book and of my brother's (= 'that of my brother'); of my house and of my uncle's; of my flowers and my sister's. 4. Has your uncle read this? 5. That does not seem ('not seems') to me probable.

*soy* 'I am' (by nature), *estoy* 'I am' (incidentally).

*hay* (for *ha + y* 'there') 'there is, there are, it is', *mirad* (cf. *reparar*, x) 'behold! lo!'; *visto* 'seen.'

1. This city in which (*donde*) I am. 2. That city in which you (2) are (1). 3. That city in which your uncle is. 4. Those women are his cousins, but these are (*add* it) not. 5. I have received these letters this morning. 6. This gentleman's name is ('gentleman calls himself') Charles, and that lady's name is Mary. 7. Have you seen this? It is very pretty. 8. Has your brother read that? 9. That is not of much consequence. 10. Behold these beautiful trees! 11. Lo, yon ('those') lofty mountains. 12. To me that seems impossible ('to me', *ton. and aton.*). 13. There is a big man in that house. 14. There are thirty days in this month.

#### WEATHER.

*¿Qué tiempo hace?*

What kind of weather is it.

*Hace muy buen tiempo.*

It is very fine weather.

*Hace mal tiempo.*

It is bad weather.

*Hace mucho sol.*

It is very sunny.

*Hace mucho calor (frio).*

It is very warm (cold).

*Hace mucho viento (or aire).*

It is very windy.

*Llueve (está lloviendo); truena; nieve; graniza.*

It rains (is raining); it thunders, it snows; it is hailing.

### XII. *Interrogatives and Relatives.*

*el correo* 'the post (-office).

*la carta* 'the letter'

*el día* 'the day'

*la fecha* 'the date'

*digo* 'I say,' *dices* 'thou sayest,' *dice* 'he says'; *dicha* 'said, told.'

1. *Que* is especially used for a required continuation; *quien* and *el cual* chiefly where the previous thought is complete in itself (also after a long clause, or to distinguish gender and number).



2. After a preposition *que* referring to persons is supplanted by *quien*. But it may be used as personal object without the ordinary *d*.

3. For *cuyo* is used also, and often preferably, *de quien*.

4. *Cuyo* agrees with the object possessed (Synt. 128). It may be repeated before different genders.

1. ¿ **Quién** es? ¿ **Quiénes** son? 2. ¿ De **quién** habla V.?  
 ¿ A **quién** da V. el libro? ¿ Con **quiénes** trabaja V.? 3. ¿ **Cuyo**  
 es este libro? (or ¿ **Cuyo** libro es este? or ¿ De **quién** es este libro?)  
 4. ¿ **Cuyas** (or ¿ De **quién**) son las manzanas coloradas **que** tiene  
 en las (or sus) manos? 5. ¿ A **cuál** de vuestros amigos he visto?  
 6. ¿ **Cuales** son estos hombres valientes? 7. **Cuál** es la fecha de  
 la carta? 8. ¿ **Qué** hora es? ¿ **Qué** dice? 9. ¿ De **cuyos**  
 caballos habla V.? Tengo un amigo **quien** (or el cual) es muy  
 rico. 10. La mujer **que** (not la cual) está aquí es hermosísima.  
 11. Los hombres de **quienes** habla V. son muy malos. 12. Las  
 casas de **que** (not quienes) hablas son mías. 13. Trabajo con  
 su hijo, **el cual** (or quien) es muy diligente. 14. La fecha de  
 la carta que he visto es el diez y siete de abril. 15. El joven **cuyo**  
 padre y (cuya) madre están en la casa es fortzuelo. 16. El  
 hombre **que** (or **á quien**) ama es un amigo mío.

1. Who speaks? 2. Who are these little boys? 3. With  
 whom (*sing. or pl.*) do you work? 4. Whose is this house (*three  
 ways*)? 5. Whose houses are these? 6. Of which of the two  
 letters do you speak? 7. What do you say of these pretty  
 flowers? 8. What is the date of these letters? What does he  
 say ('says he')? 9. How good he is! 10. He has a sister who  
 is very pretty. 11. He has a book which is very bad. 12. The  
 man (men) whom I have seen is (are) very happy. 13. The  
 houses which are white are very pretty. 14. I like the man  
 whose son and daughter (whose sons and daughters) are here.  
 15. I like that boy's old aunt, who is very good to the poor (*pl.*).

*cual* 'like'                      *lo que* 'which' ('a thing which', refer. to statement).

*que* (+ noun) *tan*, 'what a (+ noun)'

*acabar* 'complete': *acabar de* 'have just' (done a thing).

1. What men have you seen? 2. Which man have you seen? 3. Who has said that to you? 4. What is the date of your letter? 5. Which ones ('which') of your books have you sold? 6. Who (Which) are the ladies that have come? 7. To whom has the stranger spoken? 8. Whose book is this? (*express two ways*). 9. The boy who has just gone out ('completes to go out'). 10. The ladies whom (*two ways*) you have seen. 11. I seek the man whom you seek. 12. This is the man to whom you owe your (*def. art.*) life. 13. You are the man whom (*two ways*) I seek. 14. I have seen the same flowers that you have seen. 15. The father whose children (*pers. obj.*) you have seen (*express 'whose' two ways*). 16. It is difficult to determine which (*indir. interrog.*) of the two has spoken better. 17. What a furious lion! 18. The criminals are condemned, which causes a general sensation.

WEATHER (*continued*).

<i>Hace un tiempo muy variable.</i>	It is very changeable weather.
<i>Hace luna (or claridad de luna).</i>	It is moonlight.
<i>Hay niebla; hay neblina.</i>	It is foggy (misty).
<i>Hay humedad.</i>	It is damp.
<i>Hay mucho polvo.</i>	It is very dusty.
<i>Hay tempestad.</i>	It is stormy.
<i>Me parece que lloverá (fut.).</i>	It looks to me as if it were going to rain ('that it will rain').

XIII. *Indefinites.*

*decir* (inf.) 'say, saying'      *diré* 'I shall say'      *sin* 'without'

1. **Alguien** te da este libro. 2. ¿Tiene V. **algo** bueno (or *alguna cosa buena*)? 3. **Nadie** habla (or **No habla nadie**) de aquel hombrezuelo. 4. **No** quiere á **nadie**. 5. **No** tengo **nada**. 6. *Sin decir nada*. 7. *No lo diré á quienquiera*. 8. ¿Quién es **fulano**? **Cada** flor que he visto es blanca. 9. Quiero **ciertos** libros. 10. Tienen (viii) los muchachos **sendos** libros. 11. *Se lo diré á V. otro día*. 12. **Algunas** de las casas de que hablas tienen cinco ó ('or') seis cuartos. 13. **Ninguno** de sus amigos está aquí. 14. Tengo dos manzanas; **no** quiero á **ninguna** de las dos; **no** quiero á **ningunas**. 15. *Lo diré á todo discípulo diligente;*

*à todos discípulos diligentes.* 16. *Dame un libro cualquiera ; algunos libros cualesquiera.* 17. *El mismo hombre.* 18. *Mis mismos amigos.*

1. I have something good. 2. I have nothing. 3. I shall not say anything. 4. I shall not say it to anybody ; to anybody who-soever. 5. He speaks without saying anything. 6. Nobody has seen (*two ways*) the little boy. 7. Every tree in the garden is green. 8. Some flowers are white and some are red. 9. Here (are) the pens, I do not want (=wish) them, I have others. 10. The four girls have each a flower in their hand. 11. The same day ; the same night. 12. My very brothers.

*veo* ' I see '

*voy* ' I go (am going, am about) '

1. *Algo*, as adverb, ' somewhat, rather '.
2. (*No*) . . . *nada*, as adverb, ' not at all, by no means.'
3. *Quienquiera* is often followed by *que*.

1. Somebody has seen it ; nobody has seen it (*two ways*). 2. I have seen some one (*dat. obj.*) ; I have seen nobody (*two ways*). 3. Do you seek something? No, sir, I seek somebody. 4. Is the girl doing anything useful? 5. You are rather inquisitive. 6. Some one of my friends has the book. 7. No one is certain of the hour of his death. 8. I am going to see some of my horses. 9. I see nobody. 10. I am seeking, but I do not find anything. 11. Who has my pens? Nobody. Nobody has them (*two ways*). 12. This unhappy girl says nothing to anybody. 13. He speaks without any (*Synt.* § 136) preparation. 14. That man has come here without seeing anybody. 15. She does not advance at all in her studies ; still she has some (§ 25 a) musical talent. 16. Have you another horse, other horses, some other horses? 17. I have to go out at any time. 18. Buy any books! 19. Any food is good for him who (*para quien*) is hungry. 20. Whoever it be (*sea*) he has done wrong in saying (*infinit.*) it.

#### WEATHER (*continued*).

*Llueve á cántaros.*

*Hemos tenido un aguacero.*

*Las nubes se disipan.*

*El tiempo se aclara.*

It is pouring down (cf. vocab.).

We have had a shower.

The clouds are dispersing.

The weather is clearing up.

*Cae aguanieve.*

There is sleet falling.

*Estoy cansado del invierno, quiero que venga la primavera.*

I am tired of the winter, I wish the spring may come.

*Méjico (or México, §11) tiene muy buen clima.*

Mexico has a very fine climate.

#### XIV. Regular Verbs without Change.

*hablar* 'speak'

*comer* 'eat'

*dividir* 'divide'

*cantar* 'sing'

*romper* 'break'

*sufrir* 'suffer'

*hallar* 'find'

*vender* 'sell'

*unir* 'unite'

*olvidar* 'forget'

*expender* 'expend,

*vivir* 'live'

*estudiar* 'study'

*ofender* 'offend'

*recibir* 'receive'

*quedar* 'remain'; also 'be'

*era* 'was'

*mañana* 'morning; tomorrow' *ayer* 'yesterday' *siempre* 'always'

1. *Habló*,<sup>1</sup> *como, uno, vivo; hable, coma, viva.* 2. *Halla*,<sup>2</sup> *vende, vive.* 3. *Cantaba, ofendia, medía.* 4. *Olvidaré, comeré, sufriré.* 5. *Estudiaría, ofendería, viviría.* 6. *Olvidamos* (2 tenses) *olvidemos; comemos, comimos; unimos* (2 tenses). 7. *Hablaré, hablare; hablaremos, habláremos; romperé, rompiere; sufriré, sufriere.* 8. *Cantáis, cantéis; vendéis, vendáis; dividís, dividáis.* 9. *Estudiaron, estudiarán, estudiarén.* 10. *Expendedamos, expendemos, expendimos.* 11. *Hablémonos; uníos; olvidáos.* 12. *Quedo feliz.*

Translate, and give the principal parts of all the verbs not marked irregular:

Un día llegando el emperador José á una ciudad antes que su acompañamiento, le preguntó el ama de la posada, si pertenecía (381) al séquito del emperador. "No," respondió el príncipe. Sin embargo, con tan lacónica respuesta no quedó satisfecha la curiosidad de la buena mujer. Buscó un pretexto para entrar en su cuarto, y viéndole (*irr., ver* 'see') ocupado

<sup>1</sup> Items in heavy type to be specially explained, as usual.

<sup>2</sup> Give in each case all possible meanings.

en afeitarse, le preguntó, si tenía (*irr.*) algun cargo cerca del emperador. "Sí," respondió el monarca, "algunas veces le afeitó."

1. We love the brave. 2. We should always love those who love us. 3. He always (2) spoke (1) of your pretty flowers. 4. I shall speak to-morrow to my sister. 5. The young man should study more the masters. 6. He was studying much the whole day. 7. Will you sell those houses to the German who dined ('has dined') with you? 8. When did you receive this letter? I received it yesterday. 9. You would offend him in saying (*infin.*) it. 10. We should live without forgetting (*infin.*) our friends, and without offending them. 11. He was wishing that the old woman might not suffer.

After the conditional *si* 'if' use the subjunctive (present or future with a future; and imperfect or conditional with a conditional in the main clause: § 151 b, 154 a-d).

1. We think it will rain. 2. He thought it would rain. 3. They assure me that they will keep silence. 4. She will find her friend if she looks for ('seeks') him. 5. I would depart this evening, if I received the letter, and found my friend. 6. God loves those who are virtuous. 7. Will you speak to-morrow to the doctor? 8. I would speak with the doctor if he remained (were) here. 9. I shall ask him if he will be long getting there ('will delay to arrive'). 10. I asked him if he would be long getting there. 11. Will you look for ('Do you wish to seek,' or *fut.*) my books and pens? 12. I would look for them (cf. § 113 c), if time (*def. art.*) allowed. 13. If you loved good books (*def.*) you would be more instructed. 14. I was wishing he might speak, but he did not speak a word. 15. I shall speak to my friend if I find him, but nobody has seen him this morning.

## RAILROAD.

¿ A qué hora sale el tren? Partiré At what time does the first train leave? I shall go with the first train.  
por el primer tren.



<i>El tren sale á las once en punto, pero se para por los pueblos de la línea.</i>	The train leaves at eleven, sharp, but it stops at the villages on the line.
<i>Sírvase pedirme un coche.</i>	Please order a carriage for me.
<i>Déme dos billetes para C.</i>	Give me two tickets for C.
<i>Quiero registrar mi equipaje.</i>	I want to resister my baggage.
<i>¿ Hay cambio de wagones para C. ?</i>	Is there any change of cars for C. ?
<i>Vaya á buscar el baúl, yo esperaré aquí.</i>	Go and find the trunk, I shall wait here.

### XV. Regular Verbs with Orthographical Changes.

<i>tocar</i> 'touch'	<i>coger</i> 'gather'	<i>dirigir</i> 'direct'
<i>pagar</i> 'pay'	<i>vencer</i> 'vanquish'	<i>distinguir</i> 'distinguish'
<i>llegar</i> 'arrive, succeed'	<i>nacer</i> 'be born'	<i>lucir</i> 'shine'
<i>menguar</i> 'decay'	<i>carecer</i> 'want'	<i>bullir</i> 'boil'
<i>alcanzar</i> 'reach'	<i>leer</i> 'read'	<i>plañir</i> 'lament'

1. *Toca, tocas, toque, toques; tocó, toqué; tocamos, toquemos.*
2. *Pago, pagas; pague, pagues; pagué; llegamos, lleguemos.*
3. *Menguo, menguas; mengüe, mengües.* 4. *Alcanzo, alcanza; alcance, alcancé; alcanzáis, alcancéis.* 5. *Cojo, coges; coja, cogió.* 6. *Venzo, vences; venza; venci.* 7. *Nacer, nazco, naces, nace; nazca, nazcas.* 8. *Carecer, carezco, carece; carezca, careció.* 9. *Dirijo; dirijiré.* 10. *Distingo, distingues; distinga; distinguere.* 11. *Lucir, luzco, luce; luzca, lucid.* 12. *Bullo, bulles; bulló; bulleron; bullera.* 13. *Plañó; plañó; plañeron; plañese.* 14. *Leer, leo, lees; leyó; leyera, leyese, leyendo.*

Translate and give principal parts of regular verbs (marking orthographic changes):

Un estornino sediento halló una garrafa llena de agua, é (*for y*, § 104) inmediatamente procuró beber, pero el agua llegaba al cuello de la garrafa, y el pico del pájaro no la alcanzaba.

Se puso (*irr.* 'he put') luego á picar la garrafa á fin de hacer (*irr.*) un agujerito; pero en vano, porque el vidrio era muy



grueso. Entonces intentó voltear la garrafa para derramar el agua. Pero no logró de hacerlo, porque era muy pesado. Al fin halló un expediente que se le logró; echó poco á poco en la garrafa una cantidad tan grande de pedrecitas, que causaron subir el agua á la distancia que su pico alcanzaba, y luego apagó su sed.

1. I arrived yesterday at Madrid. 2. I shall arrive at Madrid to-morrow. 3. I do not believe he will arrive (*subj.* § 151 c) so soon. 4. Have you paid your tailor? Do pay him ('may you pay' *subj.*) him! 5. I did pay ('paid,' *pret.*) him yesterday. 6. Avoid bad company (*def.* § 107, 1), and seek the good. 7. He does not distinguish the genuine from imitation. 8. It is not very probable they will conquer (*subj.*, § 151 c). 9. I doubt that he appears (*subj.*) alarmed; but at the same time I am not certain that that man will pay him what he owes him.

*dije* 'I said',

*dijiste* 'thou saidst'

*dijo* 'he said'

The adverb usually follows the verb.

1. It is necessary to pay one's ('that one pay,' *subj.*, his') debts. 2. I have two horses, select one or the other, it matters not which. 3. He has not failed in his duties and I do not believe he ever fails in them. 4. The man who conquers his passions (*dat.*) is more estimable than the man who is conquered by them. 5. I doubt that he will ever conquer his passions. 6. Do not beat me, sir, said the poor boy, I suffer much from my infirmity. 7. Did you come (use *llegar*) from Madrid? No, sir, I have come from Salamanca. Last time I came from Madrid. 8. Thinking that he was (use *estar*) reading the newspaper, I read the whole (§ 137) letter. 9. We easily forget our defects, believing that the world does not know ('ignores') them. 10. As soon as I arrived, I sought the hotel, and breakfasted there (*en ella*).

#### NEWS.

¿ *Qué hay de nuevo?*

What news?

¿ *Qué noticia hay (or tenemos)?*

What news is there?

¿ *Qué se dice de bueno?*

What is the best news?

¡ *Nada, nada! Nada he oído.*

Nothing at all! I have not heard anything.

<i>Hay (Tenemos) noticias importantes.</i>	There is important news.
<i>Se habla de guerra.</i>	There is talk of war.
<i>Es una mala noticia.</i>	That is bad news.
<i>Son noticias singulares, pero las gacetas dan campo á la fantasía.</i>	That is singular news, but the papers give free range to the fancy.

Translate; note verbs with thematic *e* or *o*, and give principal parts of those which change these vowels:—

Envió una vez la ciudad de Perusa tres comisionados á solicitar del enfermo Papa Urbano Quinto el arreglo de cierto negocio. Uno de ellos que era doctor y elegido de hablar aprendió de memoria un largísimo discurso.

Llegado el momento de la audiencia, el importuno doctor pronunció toda su molestísima obra. Urbano lo toleró sin interrumpirlo, aunque se dejaba ver la violencia en que ello hacía. Acabada la oración, el Papa, sin negar ni conceder, preguntó á los comisionados si querían (*irr.*, § 88) otra cosa. Entonces uno de los dos que había notado el disgusto con que el Papa había escuchado al doctor, le dijo (*irr.*):

“Santísimo padre, otra cláusula ha insertado nuestra ciudad en la comisión, y es que si Vuestra Beatitud no nos concede lo que pedimos, el doctor vuelva á relatar todo su sermón.”

1. I think you will lose your day. 2. Think what you like!  
 3. He denies that he is trembling (*subj.*), but we think he trembles much. 4. We lose our time, and you, gentlemen, are losing yours. 5. He talks a good deal ('much'), but I do not understand anything. 6. I am not mistaken when I say that he does not understand me, and that he ascribes everything to her. 7. He has not attributed it to her, but to her sister, to his sister (*distinguish*). 8. He sleeps ten hours and loses much time. 9. He lost much time sleeping. 10. If his poor little sister has not died, I think she will die this night. 11. He does not serve in the army, but he has served there three years. 12. They asked him not to groan (*que with cond. subj.*), but he thought he would die.

1. This noise disturbs me. 2. I confess my fault. Why do you not also confess yours? 3. I prefer this pretty house to that. Which do you prefer, sir? (gentlemen?). 4. They wake up every morning at five (§ 115). When do you wake up? 5. This child is not yet teething, but I think ('that') it will teethe soon. 6. My stomach is very weak; it hardly digests anything. Eat less and it will digest better. 7. Never lie; a man who lies is always despised. 8. When do you begin? I shall begin immediately, if you wish (*add* 'it'). 9. Good children always cling to their parents. 10. Always shun bad companions. 11. I repent of my fickleness, and ask you to pardon me. 12. Are the children asleep ('sleep the c.')en) the island of St. Helena the 5th (§ 114 a) of May, 1821. 14. All these brave soldiers will die. 15. The officer girded his sword, and we all girded our swords. 16. I felt quite well that he had need of us; we all felt that we needed each other ('had need the ones of the others'). 17. What do you ask of (*omit* 'of') me? I ask you to follow (*que with subj.*) me. 18. Ask what (§ 69) you wish, it will be given you ('it will give itself to you'). 19. He took leave of his children, who followed him sighing, and asked him to return ('that' *with subj.*) soon. 20. At what time (*ora*) do you go to bed? Ordinarily I go to bed at ten o'clock (§ 115).

## AT A HOTEL.

<i>Deme un cuarto con una cama.</i>	Give me a room with one bed.
<i>¿Mozo, es ya hora de comer?</i>	Waiter, is it meal time?
<i>Tráigame la carta (or lista).</i>	Bring me the bill of fare.
<i>Quiero huevos frescos, una taza de café, manteca y las tostadas.</i>	I want fresh eggs, a cup of coffee, butter and toast.
<i>Tomaré sopa de carne con legumbres.</i>	I will take soup with vegetables.
<i>Tráigame asado y ensalada.</i>	Bring me some roast beef and salad.
<i>Alcánceme la pimienta y la mostaza.</i>	Reach me the pepper and the mustard.
<i>Tráiganos dos tabacos habanos.</i>	Bring us two Havana cigars.

**XVI. Regular Verbs with Phonetic Changes.**

## A. PENSAR VERBS.

<i>temtar</i> 'try'	<i>rogar</i> 'ask'	<i>mover</i> 'move'
<i>temblar</i> 'tremble'	<i>forzar</i> 'force'	<i>cocer</i> 'cook'

*negar* 'deny'                      *perder* 'lose'                      *torcer* 'twist'  
*errar* 'err, be mistaken' *entender* 'understand'                      *oler* 'smell'  
*volar* 'fly'

## B. SENTIR VERBS.

*mentir* 'lie'                      *erguir* 'raise up' (84. B. 1) *morir* 'die'  
*discernir* 'discern'                      *dormir* 'sleep'

## C. PEDIR VERBS.

*gemir* 'groan'                      *servir* 'serve'                      *ceñir* 'gird'

## D. HUIR VERBS.

*atribuir* 'ascribe'                      *argüir* 'argue'

1. *Tiento, tienta, tentamos; tentó; tiemble, tiemblen; temblará.*
2. *Niego, negáis; nie-gue (80), neguemos; nieguen; negué, negó,*
3. *Yerro (80), erramos; yerre, erremos; yerren; erraría.* 4. *Vuelo,*
- vologamos, vuelan; vuela, vologamos; volad, volase.* 5. *Ruegan;*
- rue-gue; rogué, rogaré.* 6. *Fuerzo, fuerce; fuerza; forcé.*
7. *Pierdas, pierdan; entiendes; entendía.* 8. *Mueve, mueven;*
- mueva; moví; moviese.* 9. *Cuez-o (81), cuec-es; cuez-a;*
- cocian; coció; tuerzo, torzamos; torcieren.* 10. *huelo (80),*
- huelas, huele, olemos, oléis, huelen.* 11. *Mentis, mienten;*
- mienta, mintamos; menti, mintió, mintieron; mentiré; mintiere;*
- discierne; discirniese.* 12. *Yergo (80) or irgo, yergue or irgue,*
- erguimos, erguís, yerguen or irguen; erguí, irguí.* 13. *Muere,*
- mueren; muramos; morian; morí, murió, murieron; muriendo;*
- muerto (84 B., Note 2); durmiéramos.* 14. *Sirvo, servimos,*
- sirva, sirvan; servid; serví; sirvió, sirvieron; sirvieran; sir-*
- vieran; gime, gimen.* 15. *Ciño, ciñe; ceñí, ciñó (for ciñió, 84),*
- ciñeron.* 16. *Atribuyes, atribuimos, atribuyen; atribuí, atribuyó;*
- arguya; argüí, arguyó; argüiríamos.*

## XVII. Irregular Verbs, § 87, 1.

Point out the irregularity of each irregular form: —

1. *Caigan, cae, cayendo, caigamos.* 2. *Yace, yazga, yaz, yacéis.*
3. *Asió, asiré, asgo, asimos.* 4. *Oigo, oyó, oia, oiremos.* 5. *Valer,*

(‘be worth, be valid ; protect ’), *valdrían, valgåis, valed.* 6. *Salgåis, saldréis, saldriamos, salgan.* 7. *Traigamòs, trajeron, traje, trajese.* 8. *Pone, ponga, puse, pondrán.* 9. *Tengáis, tuviste, tuvieráis, tendrás.* 10. *Viene, vine, ven, vendrás, vengan.* 11. *Hagáis, hará, hizo, hiciera, haz. hacer saber, ‘make known’* (lit. ‘know’). *decir que sí (que no), ‘say yes (no)’.*

Give the principal parts of stem-changing and irregular verbs : —

Vino un escribano para extender el testamento de un hombre soltero. Pero como el enfermo había fallecido antes de su llegada, los sobrinos del difunto discurrieron atar una cuerdecita á su cuello para que moviese la cabeza como diciendo que sí. Oyendo el escribano que no podía hablar el enfermo y que haría saber por señas su voluntad, se puso á ejecutar las fórmulas de costumbre. Uno de los sobrinos dijo al tío muerto : “ ¿ Deja V. á su sobrino Juan el molino que tiene V. en la ribera ? ” El que tenía la cuerda tiró, y la cabeza se meneó como diciendo “ Sí. ” Otro de los sobrinos dijo : “ ¿ Deja V. á su sobrino Felipe sus haciendas de café ? ” La cabeza se movió lo mismo que para el anterior. Entonces el escribano dirigiéndose al muerto dijo : “ ¿ Deja V. al escribano que otorga este testamento doscientas acres de tierra ? ” La cabeza yacía inmóvil. “ ¡ Válgame Dios ! ” exclamó el escribano, “ ¡ ó la cuerda se tira para todos ó para ninguno ! ”

Look up new words in the vocabulary : —

1. Bring me paper and pens. 2. The letter-carrier has brought this letter. 3. I shall have to leave within a few days. 4. I come to congratulate you. 5. What is the matter with you (‘What have you’)? I have a headache. 6. Show me (‘make me see’) that book with the pictures. 7. I wish they may make him come. 8. Do me the favor to lend me your Spanish book. I shall do so (‘it’) with much pleasure (*muy buena gana*). 9. Please give my regards to your mother (‘Put me at the feet of your lady mother’).



1. Do you wish me to ('that I' *with subj.*) go out to (*para*) look for her?
2. You will do me a great favor, and I shall be much obliged to you ('I shall thank it to you much').
3. Bring me soup and roast beef.
4. Tell the boy to ('that he' *with subj.*) wake me at six o'clock in the morning.
5. John, what have you done with my hat?
6. I have put it upon the table.
7. Why did not your friend come yesterday?
8. Because he has heard that your child is sick; but he will come to-morrow.
9. I doubt that he will come to-morrow, because I do not think ('that') he goes out on (*omit*) Sundays (§ 107,2).
10. Miss N., do you know that gentleman?
11. No, sir, I do not know him; but my sister knows him.
12. Permit me to introduce him to you.
13. Miss N., I have the honor to introduce to you Mr. (*acc. : el Señor Don*) Philip S.
14. Sir, I am pleased ('*celebro mucho*') to (*de*) know you.
15. Do you hear the noise?
16. I hear nothing, and my friends also hear nothing.
17. Many men have ears and yet hear nothing.
18. The constable caught the thief as he came out of the house.
19. Tell me, sir, do you want to pay me?
20. I have told you ('that') I will pay you to-morrow.
21. Don't fall over that stone!
22. The child will surely fall if you do not hold him by the hand.

## WALKING.

<i>Hoy tenemos un buen día, vamos á pasear.</i>	This is a fine day, let us take a walk.
<i>Voy á dar un paseo, ¿quiere V. venir conmigo?</i>	I am going to take a walk, will you go with me?
<i>¿A dónde iremos?</i>	Where shall we go?
<i>Vamos á dar una vuelta por los prados.</i>	Let us take a turn in the fields.
<i>Me gusta caminar, soy buen andador.</i>	I like to walk, I am a good walker.
<i>Atravesemos la calle por aquí.</i>	Let us cross the street here.
<i>No vaya V. tan de prisa.</i>	Do not go so fast.
<i>Volvamos á casa, que ya es tarde.</i>	Let us go home, it is late.

## XVIII. Irregular Verbs, § 87, 2-5.

1. *Doy, estoy, soy, voy.*
2. *Dé, esté, he* (two mean.), *sé, ve* (two mean.).
3. *Dará, diese, dan.*
4. *Estuve, estuviera, estará.*
5. *Sea, fui* (two mean.), *sido, fueran* (two mean.).
6. *Vi, ve, vea, vió.*
7. *Quiso, querían, quisiese.*
8. *Vaya, irán, fueseis* (two mean.).
9. *Puede, pude, podrá, pusiera.*
10. *Haya, hube, hubiese, habré, hemos.*
11. *Sabe, supe, supiera, sabrá.*
12. *Anduve, anduvieron.*
13. *Quepo, quepa, cupe, cupo.*
14. *Abierto, cubierto, escrito.*



Give the principal parts of stem-changing and irregular verbs: —

El rey de Inglaterra, Enrique Octavo, disgustado con el rey de Francia, Francisco Primero, resolvió enviarle un embajador, encargado de decir á este príncipe palabras fieras y amenazadoras: y para desempeñar esta comisión eligió á un obispo inglés, en quien tenía mucha confianza, y creía muy á propósito para la ejecución de su proyecto.

Luego que el prelado supo el objeto de su embajada, temeroso de perder la vida si trataba á Francisco Primero de modo que quería su amo, le representó el peligro á que le esponía, rogándole con instancia que le exonerase de semejante comisión. “Nada temas,” le replicó Enrique Octavo. “Si el rey de Francia te quita la vida, yo haré cortar la cabeza á cuantos franceses haya (cf. *haber*, note) en mi reino.” — “Así lo creo,” replicó el obispo; pero permitidme os diga, que de cuantas cabezas hagáis cortar, seguramente no habrá una que siente tan bien á mi cuerpo como la mía.”

1. Were you at (Did you go to) his house yesterday? 2. No, sir, but I shall go to-night (‘this n.’) 3. Where would you like to go? 4. I did wish to go to the park; but now I shall not be able to do so (‘it’), I shall not have the time. 5. Do you know that his child has died? 6. I learned (‘knew’) it yesterday, his aunt told me (*supply* ‘it’). 7. I have heard that the child’s mother has (*fut.*, § 147) been sick two weeks. 8. What do you give me to (*para*) eat? 9. I give you ham, bread and wine. 10. Do you want this box covered (‘that this box be covered’) with Russian leather? 11. Yes, sir, I want it covered like the one we saw (‘have seen’) this morning.

*caber* ‘hold; be contained in, get into’

*saber* ‘know’; *conocer* ‘know (be acquainted with).’

*dar un paseo (una vuelta)*, ‘take a walk (a turn).’

*querer decir* (‘wish to say’) mean.

1. Do you know that those strangers have arrived to-day? 2. I did not know it, but the servant has told me so ('it'). 3. Give me some cigars and some matches. 4. I have already given them to you. 5. If I knew ('that') you would not go out this evening, I would come. 6. Come, I shall not go out so far as I know. 7. Peru was formerly a colony of Spain. 8. The king and the queen (*two ways*) made the stranger enter the palace. 9. Hatred and love (§ 107, 1) are two strong motives of human acts, and will ever be so. 10. Do you know Doctor A.? 11. Yes, sir, I know him, and I know that he is a very skillful physician. 12. Has Mr. A. written to you (*put subject last*)? 13. No, sir, he has not written me yet, but I hope he will write me soon. 14. If I should go to Madrid, would you go with me? 15. I doubt whether I shall be able ('can,' *subj.*) to go with you. 16. You must go ('It is necessary that,' *subj.*) to consult a good doctor, there is none here. 17. Tell me, why did not that soldier come yesterday? 18. He could not come, because he was on (*de*) guard. 19. Some one told me he has done nothing for Charles. 20. That (*omit*) is not true. He did all he could do for a friend. 21. Don't put anything more (*nds*) here; all these things do not get into the trunk. 22. Put as much into it ('Put all') as it will hold (*subj.*). 23. Let us go and take a walk! 24. What does this mean?

## DOUBTING, PROTESTING.

<i>¿No está V. errado?</i> or <i>¿No se engaña V.?</i>	Are you not mistaken?
<i>¿Habla V. de veras?</i>	Do you speak seriously?
<i>Tengo dificultad en creerlo.</i>	I find it hard to believe it.
<i>Apuesto que no sea verdad.</i>	I wager it is not true.
<i>Dudo que sea posible.</i>	I doubt if it can be so.
<i>Digo que sí, es un hecho.</i>	I say it is, it is a fact.
<i>Eso no es sino muy cierto.</i>	It is but too certain.
<i>Como soy que es verdad.</i>	It is true as I live.

XIX. *Periphrastic Verbs.*

The auxiliary must not be separated from the participle: *¿ha hablado V.?*  
not *¿ha V. hablado?*

1. *He visto á tu padre (madre).* 2. *Sé que tú has dado este libro á mi hermano.* 3. *Hemos dado una manzana al mucha-*

*chillo.* 4. *Tenemos en nuestro jardín unas flores que las hemos comprado este verano.* 5. *Ellos me han dicho que habían estado aquí.* 6. *Apenas había yo andado un cuarto de hora cuando encontré á un hombre que iba cazando.* 7. *Tendría muchas más riquezas, si no las hubiese gastado.* 8. *Si hubiésemos comprado la casa tendríamos algo para dejar á nuestros hijos.* 9. *El niño (la niña) es amado (amada) de todos.* 10. *Las chicas eran amadas del padre.* 11. *Si la mujer no fuese querida no sería en la casa.* 12. *Estos hombres han sido muy felices.* 13. *Su riqueza está gastada.* 14. *Divididos estaban caballeros ('knights') y escuderos ('squires').* 15. *Quedo á V. muy agradecido (or -da).* 16. *Estaba hablando con mi amigo cuando vino.* 17. *Queda durmiendo.*

Un hombre respetable, que había hecho gran papel en París, quedó reducido á la indigencia, y sólo se alimentaba de las limosnas de pan que de ocho en ocho días le mandaban de la parroquia. Un día encargó le envasen mayor cantidad. Llamóle el cura, y le preguntó si vivía solo. “¿Con quién queréis que yo viva,” le respondió, “cuando estoy abandonado de todo el mundo?” “Pues si estáis solo,” continuó el cura, “por qué habéis pedido más pan del necesario?” Desconcertado el pobre hombre confesó que tenía un perro. El cura le manifestó que él solo era distribuidor de pan para los pobres, y que la honradez exigía que se deshiciera del perro. “Y bien, señor,” exclamó, “si lo abandono, ¿quién me amará?” Enternecióse el párroco, sacó la bolsa, y se la dió diciendo, “Tomad, que esto me pertenece.”

1. How many times have you been in Paris? 2. I have not been there more than once. 3. Mary is much loved by her schoolmates. 4. America was discovered by Columbus in the year 1492. 5. We were invited but we did not have time to go. 6. All were assassinated by the robbers. 7. They say that many soldiers have been killed in the battle. 8. It is raining, and they

have not yet arrived. 9. I would have given them the horse, if they had (*imp. subj.*) asked me for it.

*tener* as auxiliary denotes possession ('have = possess, hold, have in hand).

1. Have you been in Spain? 2. No, sir, I have never been in Spain, but I have always wished to see that interesting country. 3. As soon as the guests had taken their seats, the banquet began. 4. What would you have done, if you had been in my place? 5. I would have said that I should never permit it. 6. That is what I did tell ('have said to') them. 7. The wool of Spain is much sought after. 8. Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden, was killed in the battle of Lützen, the 6th of November, 1632. 9. This chapter has not been explained to us by our master. 10. If Mr. Leo were not obliged to start for Madrid this evening, I would invite him to the party. 11. When our translations are ('will be') finished, they will be corrected by the teacher. 12. My companion who was ('has been') wounded 'has died. 13. I have counted the money, but I do not have the money counted. 14. I shall have the work finished to-morrow, but I shall not have finished the work to-morrow. 15. I did not want ('have not wished') to sell him the suit which I have bought. 16. This room is poorly illuminated. 17. They were (use *estar*) amazed to hear the news. 18. This dialogue is getting ('goes being') tiresome.

#### FEELINGS.

*Me alegro mucho de la dicha de V.*

I am very glad of your good fortune.

*Celebro muchísimo el suceso de V.*

I rejoice greatly at your success.

*No vendrá, yo lo siento mucho.*

He will not come, and I am very sorry.

*Va de peor en peor, y estoy desconsolado.*

It is getting worse and worse, and I am disconsolate.

*Nada se me va en ello.*

I care nothing about it.

*No se me da un bledo.*

I care not a straw.

*No puedo volver de mi asombro.*

I cannot overcome my astonishment.

*Hace V. de una pulga un elefante.*

You are making a mountain of a mole-hill.

#### XX. Reflexive (or Reciprocal) Verbs.

1. Reflexives are to be rendered as passives.
2. The reflexive pronoun may be appended to a personal verb-form beginning any sentence, or used alone (cf. Synt. 120).

1. *Yo me lisonjeo (á mí mismo);* or *lisonjéome.* 2. *Él se engaña.* 3. *Me tomo la libertad; me he tomado (invar.) la libertad.* 4. *La puerta se abrió.* 5. *No sabe lo que se hace.* 6. *Los buenos libros se venden caros.* 7. *Este libro se publica en Leipsic.* 8. *¿ Como se llama V.?* 9. *Ellos se engañan mucho.* 10. *Se equivoca* or *equivócase*; *equivóqueme; heme equivocado.* 11. *El hombre se arrepentía.* 12. *No valdrá quejarse.* 13. *Las chicas se alegran.* 14. *Se duerme (91, 1); ella se muere.* 15. *Se me (dat.) figura (impers.) que venga.* 16. *Se le había olvidado que estaba yo aquí.* 17. *Se le trató como á un rey* ('He was treated as a king': give literal meaning). 18. *Se le aborrece* (He is abhorred': lit.?). 19. *La guerra se aborrece.* 20. *Páguese me lo que se me debe* (= 'Let them pay what they owe me': lit.?). 21. *No se ve á las cinco* ('One can no longer see at five o'clock': lit.?). 22. *Eso no se puede decir,* or *Eso no puede decirse.* 23. *Aquí se habla español.* 24. *Nos alabamos (91, 2); alabémonos.* 25. *Se aman (el uno al otro, la una á la otra, etc.); amaos los unos á los otros.*

Presentóse una diputación de los panaderos ante el magistrado pidiéndole permiso para encarecer el pan; y al retirarse dejaron los enviados diestramente encima de la mesa un bolsillo con cien onzas de oro. Volvieron algunos días después, no dudando que el bolsillo habría abogado poderosamente por su causa; pero el magistrado les dijo: "Señores, he pesado sus razones en la balanza de la justicia, y no las he encontrado de bastante peso: no me ha parecido justo el hacer sufrir á un pueblo entero por un alza de precio mal entendida. Además he hecho distribuir el dinero que me dejaron entre los dos hospitales que hay en esta ciudad, no dudando fuese tal el uso que VV. deseaban se hiciera de él."

1. You express yourself very well in Spanish. 2. I am very glad ('I rejoice much') to (*omit*) find you at home. 3. At what



hour do you rise in (*por*) the morning? 4. I am accustomed to rise between six and seven; but yesterday I rose at five, and to-morrow I shall also get up at five. 5. Your friend makes fun of me. 6. You are mistaken; I do not believe ('that') he ever makes fun of anybody. 7. The kings looked upon themselves as above ('superior to') the law. 8. The kings (*dat.*) were regarded (*refl.*) as above the law. 9. That will easily be done.

1. Please be seated ('Have the kindness to seat yourself'). 2. Your servant has made a mistake in (*omit*) giving me this book. 3. John, why don't you wash your hands? 4. I have already washed my hands. 5. When will you go on board ('embark')? 6. We shall go on board to-morrow. 7. What is your name ('How do you call yourself')? 8. My name is Charles F. 9. The captain ordered the soldiers to keep away from the road. 10. Arise! 11. It is not yet time to get up. 12. Fortunately his fears were not realized. 13. It is said that the forces of Aguinaldo have revolted. 14. It is well known that he is a traitor. 15. In this way time will be gained and work saved. 16. In Germany people seem to live ('it appears that it lives itself') only for war. 17. The pyramids were built by slaves. 18. The trunk was searched.

#### ORDERING CLOTHES.

<i>No quiero ropa hecha; ¿hace V. también de encargo?</i>	I don't want ready-made clothing; do you also make to order?
<i>Quiero que me tome V. las medidas.</i>	I want you to take my measure.
<i>Quiero que me haga una casaca y un par de pantalones de este paño escocés.</i>	I want you to make me a dress-coat and a pair of pants of this Scotch cloth.
<i>Quiero la ropa el sábado sin falta.</i>	I want the suit Saturday, without fail.
<i>Mándeme la ropa á la posada, y mande su cuenta al mismo tiempo.</i>	Send my suit to the hotel, and send your bill at the same time.
<i>Este traje me queda muy bien. ¿Cuanto es su valor?</i>	This suit suits me very well. What is it worth?

#### XXI. *Indeclinables.*

1. *Vendré temprano, luego.* 2. *Le he visto á menudo.* 3. *Vino de golpe.* 4. *Lo siento* ('feel' = 'regret') *mucho, muchísimo.*



5. *Habló mejor que su amigo.* 6. *Tiene mucho más que V.*  
 7. *Lo haré fácilmente.* 8. *Llegó recientemente.* 9. *Habló alto (bajo).* 10. **No, señora, no lo sé.** 11. **No me lo dirá jamás,** or **Jamás me lo dirá.** 12. *Este libro no le he nunca tenido* (or *nunca le he tenido*). 13. **No me ha dicho que unas palabras** (words). 14. **No vivo sinó para ella.** 15. **No tengo ni pluma ni papel** (or **Ni pluma ni papel tengo**). 16. *Anduvo con su padre y madre (sus hijos é hijas) al través de este campo* ('field'). 17. *Lo haré con tal que pueda.* 18. *Lo vió venir hácia sí.* 19. *¡Pobre de mí!*

Para comprender el Carnaval en Madrid, es necesario ser madrileño, ó por lo ménos haber vivido algun tiempo en aquella ciudad y conocer bien el carácter español. Un gentío inmenso llena las calles; vistosos y mil variados trajes se ostentan; un marqués se pasea con una lavandera; Mefistófeles con Margarita; un turco de parte amigablemente con un cruzado; una aldeana de los Alpes ofrece flores á un oso; un mosquetero da el brazo á una mariposa; un gran bajá se tutea con un fakir; un Mandarín Chino conversa con un marroquí; un arlequín acompaña á un mono; todas estas anomalías se ven en esos días de locura. Un coro de pastores aquí, una estudiantina allá, un grupo abigarrado de gitanos más lejos; la gente circulando, los ojos brillantes de placer, á través de los antifaces, la alegría pintada en todos los rostros; los dichos, las galanterías, el ruido, las músicas; todo esto se ve y se oye al mismo tiempo en el hermoso paseo de "El Prado."

Si vamos al soberbio paseo de "La Castellana," se nos presenta la misma escena, si bien con más pompa: los blasonados coches de la nobleza con sus grandes tiros, y las ruedas doradas ó plateadas, ocupados por sus dueños y rodeados por atrevidas máscaras á quienes la libertad que da el disfraz, les permite mezclarse en todas partes.

En esos días la familia real, abandonando su orgullo y pompa, se mezcla entre las turbas de máscaras, ya á pié, ya en carruaje; el pueblo tutea ese día á el rey, el Carnaval hace á todos iguales; la careta permite esta igualdad. Colocado un observador en algún balcon de alguno de los edificios que dan á "El Prado," podrá ver, á lo largo de este paseo "La Castellana," y "Recoletos," las grandes oleadas de máscaras que llenan los tres citados paseos, y que son reforzadas por otras que bajan por las calles de Alcalá, Carrera de San Gerónimo y calle de Atocha. El público, los carruajes, la policía á caballo, todo esto forma un conjunto indescriptible.

Llega la noche, á las diez todo el mundo se va á los teatros, donde se baila hasta las seis de la mañana siguiente; la animación, la bulla, la confusión, son como las de la tarde. Desde el Teatro Real de la Opera con sus danzas aristocráticas hasta el Teatro de Capellanes con sus desenfrenados bailes, en todos se reproduce cada año las mismas fiestas que duran tres días; tres días de locuras.

1. I like John much, but I like Frederick more. 2. Of all, I like Charles the most. 3. This boy reads worse than his sister. 4. Of all the pupils he behaves the worst. 5. He spoke in a very learned manner ('most learnedly,' *absol. superl.* directly in *-ísimo*, or in *-mente* from an adj. in *-ísimo*). 6. He always told me that he was very rich, but I never believed it. 7. I have only ten dollars and I can give nothing. 8. He travels only rarely. 9. Neither ('the one or the other') dared to come to the house. 10. He tells me ('that') he has neither father nor mother.

*Por* and *para* are used as follows:

*por*: 'for' (referring to price, exchange, estimate, seeking, duration of time);  
 'by' (referring to a physical rather than mental act, otherwise *de*);  
 'through' ('by way of'); 'on account of.'

*para*: 'for' (referring to purpose, direction, consideration, time-limit); 'be about' (after *estar*); ('in order) to.'

1. He asks only a (*omit*) thousand dollars for the house. 2. He says he will go to the country for a few weeks. 3. She passes for rich, but she has only that house. 4. The soldiers will pass through this street before evening. 5. That boy will certainly be punished by his teacher. 6. He will go to France, and he will return by way of England. 7. In order to understand Spanish you must study the language much. 8. This letter is for the evening mail. 9. It will be necessary to have patience to attain this object. 10. He has told me that next Monday he will depart for Europe. 11. I have an engagement for this evening. 12. One does not live ('It lives itself not') in order to eat. 13. I believe the wind is about to change. 14. They took only the time necessary for short rests. 15. The silence was interrupted only by the whisperings of the wind. 16. Have you ever seen anything to equal that (*dat.*)?

## PHRASES OF ETIQUETTE.

*Servidor á V., señor.*

Your servant, sir.

*A los piés de V., señora.*

At your feet, madam ('I greet you, I thank you, M.)

*Siéntese V., le suplico.*

Pray, be seated.

*Tengo el gusto (honor) de presentar á V. al señor don A.*

I have the pleasure (honor) to introduce to you Mr. A.

*Celebro la ocasión de conocer á V. (caballero).*

I am glad to make your acquaintance (sir).

*Permiteseme de rogar ¿ donde reside V.?*

Allow me to ask where you live?

*Su casa de V. está número diez Calle del Rey.*

'Your' (by politeness = 'my home is yours') home is No. 10, King Street.

*Tiene V. una sortija brillante.*

You have a brilliant ring.

*Está á la disposición de V.*

It is yours.

*Mil gracias, no podría mejorar de dueño.*

A thousand thanks, it would not have a better owner.

XXII. *Articles.*

1. Man is mortal. 2. Gold is heavier than silver. 3. Flowers are the adornment of the earth. 4. Prudence is an important part of valor. 5. Wealth and poverty are relative things. 6. Her eyes are ('She has the eyes') too small. 7. Her hair was ('she had') disarranged. 8. England is a great maritime power. 9. Canada is a dependency of England. 10. Queen Victoria of England is now in Spain. 11. Mr. F. has come with Mrs. F.

12. Mr. F. is a Spaniard and a soldier. 13. My brother speaks and writes Spanish. 14. How ('At how much?') do you sell the butter? At forty cents a pound. 15. Is your master a Spaniard? No, sir, he is an American. 16. This man has a good heart.

One of the last kings of Spain whom the fortune of war ('arms') had deprived of various considerable forts, nevertheless received from the greater part of his courtiers the title of Great. "His greatness," said a Spaniard, "is like that of ditches, which grow ('make themselves') bigger in proportion to the (*de*) earth which is removed from them ('which they remove from them,' *dat.*).

#### IDIOMS.

<i>Con mil amores.</i>	Most willingly.
<i>Dar por supuesto (por sentado).</i>	Take for granted.
<i>Dar en el blanco.</i>	Hit the mark.
<i>Decir algo á uno en sus barbas.</i>	Tell one something to his face.
<i>Dejar en blanco.</i>	Pass over unnoticed.
<i>Dejadas las burlas; or chanzas aparte.</i>	Jest aside.
<i>En un cerrar y abrir de ojos.</i>	In the twinkling of an eye.
<i>Encenderse en cólera.</i>	Fly into a passion.
<i>Errar el tiro.</i>	Miss one's aim.
<i>Estar á sus anchas.</i>	Be at one's ease.
<i>Hablar á bulto (al aire).</i>	Speak at random (idly).
<i>Llamar á grito herido.</i>	Call with all one's might.

### XXIII. Adjectives and Nouns.

1. She related that the Nazarenes loved their God, their king, their parents, and their brothers and sisters (*one word*). 2. I love liberty, and would die for it. 3. I sent a servant, and I sent a letter. 4. Whom are you looking for ('whom do you seek')? What are you looking for? 5. I am looking for my cousin. I am looking for my horse. I am looking for my book. 6. I have a horse and I do not want yours. 7. He tells us that he has routed two hundred enemies. 8. I prefer the brave man to the wary. 9. All the teachers praise this diligent and attentive boy. 10. The king has already appointed the ministers. 11. I will give everything to him who ('whom') saves (*subj.*) my daughter. 12. Let us not abandon this man to his misery! 13. The writing-desk and the chair are new. 14. The writing-desks and the chairs are new. 15. Who has given me these fragrant flowers? 16. He is a poor and unfortunate man. 17. Suddenly they were attacked by those savage Indians. 18. I

despise gossiping women and lazy men. 19. The young girl was pale, and the king was dying with (*de*) pain seeing his daughter die.

Louis XIV one day asked one of his courtiers: "Do you know Castilian?" — "No, sir," answered the courtier, "but I will learn it." He took great pains ('applied himself much') to learn this idiom, thinking the king had the intention to appoint him ambassador to the Court of Spain; and after a time he said to the king: "Sire, now I know Castilian." "Very well," answered the king, "then you can read Don Quixote in the ('its') original."

#### IDIOMS (*continued*).

<i>Llevar á mal.</i>	Take amiss.
<i>Mal de su grado.</i>	Unwillingly.
<i>Mal su grado.</i>	In spite of him.
<i>Mostrar la suela de los zapatos.</i>	Take to one's heels.
<i>No estar para fiestas.</i>	Be out of temper.
<i>No dejar piedra por mover.</i>	Leave no stone unturned.
<i>Per fas ó per nefas.</i>	Right or wrong.
<i>Salga lo que saliere.</i>	Happen what may.
<i>Sin qué ni porqué.</i>	Without rhyme or reason.
<i>Subir á uno sobre los cuernos de la luna.</i>	Exalt one to the skies.
<i>Tener en la punta de la lengua.</i>	Have on the tip of one's tongue.
<i>Tener el pié en dos zapatos.</i>	Have two strings to one's bow.

#### XXIV. *Pronouns.*

1. Give me an apple if you have one. 2. I shall buy some roses if there are any. 3. It seems to me ('that') you do not want to come (*use both the simple and the expletive construction in sentences, 3-10*). 4. Follow thy own inclination, and let me follow mine. 5. He never knew his father. 6. I have told her that you will come to-morrow. 7. I have already told her so ('it'). 8. It seems to me, sir, that we should ('ought') not continue this conversation here. 9. The general attributes this victory wholly to the bravery of his soldiers. 10. Do you have my umbrella and Ellen's? I have hers and Arthur's, but I do not have yours. 11. He has lost his right (left) arm. 12. I have gained this honestly. 13. The lady whose son (sons, daughter, daughters) is here is his aunt. 14. I entrusted this mission to a friend whom I knew well. 15. He who does not know this is ignorant indeed. 16. To him who is contented nothing is lacking. 17. There is no human diligence that can (*subj.*) prevent it. 18. He gave me some points concerning the customs of the country, which



were (*pret.*) very useful to me. 19. He gave (use *cargar*) me some commissions, which I performed. 20. He humbles himself to nobody. 21. Nobody is contented with his fate. 22. A certain friend of his said, "Love could never commit such a cowardly act." 23. Every important work requires effort and perseverance.

In (the) midst of the great crisis of the Seven Years' War, one of Frederick the Great's soldiers deserted on the eve of a battle. The deserter was seized ('They seized,' etc.) and brought before the King, who eyed him sharply. "Why did you ('thou') leave me?" asked Frederick. "Sire," answered ('him') the deserter, "your affairs are taking such a bad turn ('go so badly') that I thought it was time to quit them." "Well," said the king ('to him'), "remain, however, until to-morrow, and if they do not then take a better turn, we will desert together."

## SAYINGS.

<i>Mds vale tarde que nunca.</i>	Better late than never.
<i>El que calla, otorga.</i>	Silence gives consent.
<i>Al hierro caliente, batir de repente.</i>	Strike while the iron is hot.
<i>Amor con amor se paga.</i>	One good turn deserves another.
<i>Cada oveja con su pareja.</i>	Birds of a feather flock together.
<i>Donde fuego se hace, humo sale.</i>	No smoke without fire.
<i>Donde hay gana hay maña.</i>	Where there is a will there is a way.
<i>De la mano d la boca desaparece la sopa.</i>	There is many a slip betwixt cup and lip.

## XXV. Verbs.

1. When shall you depart? I shall depart to-day. 2. How long have you been in America? I have been here a year; and I have been here once before, five years ago. 3. Where did you learn your Spanish? I learned it in Spain. 4. I have not written to-day to my companion, but I did write last week. 5. The Greeks considered all the other nations as barbarians. 6. What time is it? It is probably (It may be: *fut.*) three. 7. I wrote some eight days ago (some . . . ago, *fut.*) that I would come. 8. May the heavens and the angels praise Thee, O Lord! 9. I urged him to abstain from such an undertaking. 10. Do you wish me to sing ('that I sing') a little? 11. It is necessary that henceforth we rise early. 12. I work now that I may have finished before to-morrow. 13. I doubt that what they have said is true, and that he is guilty at all. 14. If your friend were not obliged to start for Madrid, I would



invite him to the entertainment to-night. 15. If I had (§ 154 a) money I would buy this horse. 16. I am sorry ('that') you have been obliged to wait for me. 17. I would be glad if he came; I would have been glad if he had come. 18. It is a pity that you are in such a hurry ('be in a hurry,' *tener prisa*). 19. I deny that he ever has the intention of returning (*infinít.*). 20. He was the most loyal squire that ever served a knight-errant. 21. I shall not obey him whoever he be, and whatever he say. 22. To sleep too much is as hurtful as to eat and drink too much. 23. Men make themselves unhappy by desiring what they do not need.

SAYINGS (*continued*).

<i>El que tarde llega caldo bebe.</i>	First come first served.
<i>La necesidad carece de ley.</i>	Necessity knows no law.
<i>Lo que no se puede remediar se ha de aguantar.</i>	What cannot be cured must be endured.
<i>Más vale un pájaro en la mano que ciento volando.</i>	A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
<i>Piedra movediza no coje musgo.</i>	A rolling stone gathers no moss.
<i>Salir de llamas y caer en brasas.</i>	To jump out of the frying-pan into the fire.
<i>No es todo oro lo que reluce.</i>	Not all is gold that glitters.

**XXVI. *Indeclinables.***

1. The colonel is here; the colonel comes here; he comes this way. 2. My friend lives in Fulton street (*def. art.*); it is far from here there. 3. The invalid was much better yesterday. 4. This café is much frequented by officers. 5. It was so dark that it was impossible to see anything. 6. I say yes, but he says no. 7. It is two months since I arrived here. 8. I saw the doctor two hours ago. 9. He had been mourning ('He was mourning') her loss a year. 10. They had just arrived when she died. 11. I have just resolved to write her a letter. 12. Finally he has understood what I have said. 13. I again tell your brother that I shall not be able to come. 14. We shall never see onê another (§ 91, 2) again. 15. He is more resolute now than then. 16. I fear he will lose the respect of his pupils. 17. I don't deny that it is a laughable matter. 18. We are the servants of the king, but not his slaves. 19. Good behavior is not the work of nature, but rather of a good education.

Spanish (§107, 1), the modern name for Castilian, is the result of the vicissitudes and the final triumph of the different dialects and languages that have

been spoken (*refl.*) in the peninsula by the different races which have established themselves there.

The language spoken in Spain in the most remote times was the Iberian or Basque. Latin later came to be the general language of the country, which produced many of the classic Latin writers. The Goths changed the Latin forms. After many centuries came the Arabian influence. Then the harmony and sonorousness of the Mussulman tongue began to prevail. At (*en*) the time of the expulsion of the Moors, it can be said that two languages were spoken by the Christians—that of the North, which was Latin mixed with Gothic and Basque; and that of the South, which was Latin mixed with Arabic. The combination and mixture of these two tongues produced at last the Castilian or Spanish (the modern name).

• SAYINGS (*continued*).

*Sobre gusto no hay disputa.*

There is no disputing about taste.

*A quien madruga Dios lo ayuda.*

God helps those who help themselves.

*Donde fueres haz como vieres.*

At Rome, do as the Romans do.

*La caridad bien ordenada empieza por uno mismo.*

Charity begins at home.

*Más vale buen callar que mal hablar.*

Better to be silent than to speak ill.

*Obra de común, obra de ningún.*

Everybody's business is nobody's business.

*A lo hecho fecho.*

What is done cannot be undone.

*Quien abrojos siembra espinas coje.*

He who sows brambles reaps thorns.

# I. SPANISH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

Articles, numerals, and pronouns, and also nouns and adjectives of entirely evident form and meaning, are omitted. The gender of masculines in -o, feminines in -a, and sex-words, are not given. For Spanish words with less evident or no English affinity, cognates in SMALL CAPITALS, or (where feasible) brief etymological hints are given. Observe that *ch*, *ll*, *ñ* come as simple letters after *c*, *l*, *n*.

## A.

abandonar, abandon.

acabar [L. *caput*, 'head'], complete, end, finish; — *de*, have just.

acompañamiento, accompaniment, attendance.

acre, *m.*, acre.

abigarrar, [L. *bis-variare*, VARY], variegate.

abogar, ADVOCATE. [open.

abrir [L. *aperire*, cf. E. *aperient*],

además [*más*], moreover.

afeitar [L. *affectare*?], trim, adorn; shave.

agradecido, GRATEFUL.

agua [L. *agua*], water. —*cero*, shower.

aguantar [?], sustain, bear.

agu-ja [L. *acus*], needle. —*jerito*, small hole.

alcanzar [Ar.], reach.

al-dea [Ar.], village. —*deana*, village-girl, country lass.

ale-grar [L. *alacer*, 'glad,' cf. E. *allegro*], rejoice; *refl.* be glad. —*gría*, joy.

alemán ['Aleman'], German.

alimentar, nourish.

alma [L. *anima*], soul.

alza [L. *altus*, 'high'], rise.

allá [L. *illac*], there.

ama [?], mistress.

amar, love.

amenazadora, menacing.

ami-ga, —go [L. *amicus*], friend.

amo [?], master.

ancho, AMPLE, broad; *á sus —chas*, at ease.

anterior, previous.

antes (*de*), before.

antifaz ['before-FACE'], *m.* veil.

año [L. *annum*], year.

apagar [ak. to PACIFY?], quench, extinguish; satisfy.

apenas [L. *pena*, PAIN], hardly.

aprender [cf. E. apprentice], learn.

ár-bol [L. *-bor*], *m.*, tree. —*bolito*, small tree.

argüir, argue.

arlequín, harlequin.

arreglo, RULE, arrangement.

asa-do [*asar* (L. *assare*, fr. *ar-dere*, burn)], roasted. —*da*, roast-beef.

así [L. *sic*], thus.

asir [?], grasp, hold.  
 atar [L. *aptare* ?], fasten.  
 atravesar [*través*], cross.  
 a-trevido [*atribuirse*], bold. -tribuir, attribute.  
 aunque, although.  
 ayudar [L. *ad, juvare*], help.

## B.

bai-lar, dance. -le, *m.*, BALL.  
 bajá, bashaw, pasha.  
 ba-jar, go down. -jo [L. *bassus*], low.  
 banco, BENCH.  
 bas-tante, enough. -tar [?], suffice.  
 bastón [cf. E. *-nade*], *m.*, cane. -ada, -azo, cane-rap.  
 baúl [?], *m.*, trunk.  
 beber [L. *bibere*], drink.  
 belga, Belgian.  
 bello, BEAUTIFUL.  
 blanco, white.  
 blasonado, emblazoned.  
 bleño [L. *blitum*], wild amaranth; *fig.* straw.  
 bo-ca [L. *bucca*], mouth. -caza, big mouth.  
 bol-sa, PURSE. -sillo, (small) purse.  
 bonito [L. *bonus*], pretty.  
 brasa [cf. E. *brazier*], live coal.  
 brazo [L. *bracchium*, cf. E. *embrace*], arm.  
 bueno [L. *bonus*], good.  
 bulfo, bulk; á —, at random.  
 bu-lla, noise. -llir, BOIL.  
 burlón [cf. *burlesque*], wag; roguish.  
 buscar [ak. to E. *bush* ?], seek.

## C.

caballo, horse.  
 cabeza [L. *caput*], head.  
 cada [L. *cata*], every.  
 café, *m.*, coffee.  
 callar [?], be silent.  
 calle [L. *callis*], *f.* street.  
 cansado [?], tired.  
 can-tar, CHANT, sing.  
 cántaro [L. *-tharus*], pitcher.  
 cantidad, *f.*, quantity.  
 capellán, chaplain, priest.  
 carácter, character.  
 carecer [*carere*], lack, want.  
 ca-ra [Gr. *kdra*, head], face. -reta, mask.  
 cargo, charge.  
 caro [L. *-rus*], dear.  
 carruaje, *m.*, vehicle, carriage.  
 carta [ak. to E. *card*], letter.  
 casa [L.], house.  
 castellano, Castilian.  
 cazar, hunt, CHASE.  
 ceñir [L. *cingere*], gird.  
 cerca [L. *circa*] de, near, with.  
 citado, cited, named.  
 ciudad, CITY.  
 cláusula, clause.  
 cocer, COOK.  
 coger, COLLECT, gather.  
 comer [L. *com-edere*], EAT.  
 como [L. *quo-modo*], how.  
 comprar [L. *com-parare*, PAIR, match; so 'pay for'], buy.  
 coche, *m.*, coach.  
 co-locar, LOCATE, place, arrange.  
 colorado [ak. to E. *colored*]; ruddy.  
 conceder, concede, grant.

**confianza**, confidence.  
**conocer** [L. *co-gnoscere*], KNOW.  
**continuar**, continue.  
**comisionado**, commissioner.  
**comprender**, comprehend, understand.  
**coraje**, *m.*, courage.  
**coro**, chorus.  
**cor-reo**, mail. -rer [L. *currere*], run.  
**cortar** [L. *curlus*, CURT], cut.  
**creer** [L. *credere*], believe.  
**cruzado**, crusader.  
**cosa**, thing.  
**costumbre**, *m.*, custom.  
**cuadro**, SQUARE; picture.  
**cuando** [L. *quando*], when.  
**cuantos**, as many.  
**cuarto**, QUARTER; room.  
**cuello** [L. *collum*], neck.  
**cuer-decita**, little string. -**da**, CORD, string.  
**cuerno**, HORN.  
**cuerpo**, body.  
**cura** [L. *-rare*, care], *m.*, parish priest.  
**curiosidad**, *f.*, curiosity.

## CH.

**chico** [Basque *chiqui*], small.  
**chino**, Chinese.

## D.

**dar** [L. *dare*], give; — **á**, look upon.  
**deber** [ak. to E. *debt*], owe; *n.*, DUTY.  
**decir** [L. *dicere*], say.  
**dejar** [pop. L. *desitare* (L. *sinere*, let)], leave, let.

**departir** [L. *dis-partire*], discourse, talk.  
**derramar** [*rama*, branch?] pour.  
**desde** [L. *de, ex?*], from.  
**desear**, desire.  
**des-em-peñar** [L. *piuus*, pledge, pawn], redeem, fulfil.  
**des-en-frenado** [L. *frenum*, bridle], unbridled.  
**des-hacer**, undo; get rid.  
**día**, *m.*, day.  
**diestramente**, DEXTEROUSLY.  
**difícil**, difficult.  
**difunto**, defunct.  
**dinero** [L. *denarius*], money.  
**dirigir**, direct.  
**discernir**, discern.  
**discípulo**, pupil.  
**discurrir**, discourse; contrive, plan.  
**disfraz** [?], disguise, mask.  
**disgustarse**, be displeased.  
**distinguir**, distinguish.  
**dorado** [L. *aurum*, gold], gilded.  
**dormir**, sleep.  
**dueño** [L. *dominus*], lord.

## E.

**echar** [L. *jactare*], throw.  
**ejecutar**, perform, execute.  
**ejercicio**, exercise.  
**eligir**, elect.  
**embajada**, embassy.  
**embajador**, ambassador.  
**embargo** [ak. to E. *bar*], embargo; impediment: sin —, nevertheless.  
**emperador**, emperor.  
**en** [L. *in*], in.

**encarecer** [*caro*, dear], raise the price of.  
**encargar**, CHARGE, ask.  
**encender** [*L. -re*], kindle.  
**encima** [*cima*, top] **de**, upon; over.  
**encontrar**, encounter, meet; find.  
**enfermo**, feeble, sick.  
**en-gañar**, deceive. -gaño [ak. to *E. game* ?], deceit.  
**Enrique**, Henry.  
**entender** [*L. in-tendere*], understand.  
**entero**, ENTIRE.  
**en-ternecer** [*tierno*, TENDER], soften; *refl.*, be moved.  
**entrar**, enter.  
**entre** [*L. inter*], between.  
**en-viar** [*L. via*, WAY], send. -viado, sent; deputy.  
**erguir**, ERECT, raise up.  
**errar**, err.  
**escena**, scene.  
**escribano**, scribe, notary.  
**escuchar** [*L. auscultare*: cf. Fr. *écouter*], hear.  
**español**, Spanish.  
**estación**, STATION; season.  
**estornino**, STARLING.  
**estu-diantina**, student (*adj. f.*), -diar, STUDY.  
**exclamar**, exclaim.  
**exigir**, EXACT, require.  
**exonerar**, exonerate, free.  
**expende**, expend.  
**exponer**, EXPOSE.  
**extender**, extend

## F.

**fácil**, easy.  
**fallecer** (*obsol.*), FAIL; die.  
**fe**, FAITH.  
**fecha** [*L. facta*], date.  
**feliz**, happy.  
**feo** [*L. foetus*; ak. to *E. fetid*], ugly.  
**ferro-carril** [*ferro*, iron, *carril*, (CART-)way], *m.*, railroad.  
**fiero** [ak. to *E. fierce*], proud.  
**fiesta**, feast.  
**figurarse**, imagine.  
**fin**, end: **al** —, at length.  
**flo-r**, FLOWER. -recita, little flower.  
**fortezuelo**, not very strong.  
**forzar**, force.  
**francés**, Frenchman.  
**Francia**, France.  
**Francisco**, Francis.  
**fuerte**, strong.  
**fusi-l** [ak. to *E. fusil, fuse*], *m.*, gun. -lazo, musket-shot.

## G.

**galantería**, gallantry.  
**gana** [?], appetite, desire.  
**garrafa** [ak. to *E. carafe*], bottle.  
**gastar**, waste.  
**gemir** [*L. gemere*], sigh.  
**gen-te**, people. -tilhombre, gentleman. -tío, crowd.  
**gitano**, -na, GIPSY.  
**grado** [*L. gratus*], pleasure.  
**gracias** [*L. -tias*], thanks.  
**grueso**, thick: GROSS.



## H.

- haber [L. *-re*], have.  
 hablar [L. *fabulari*, talk; ak. to E. *fable*], speak.  
 ha-cer [L. *facere*], make, do.  
 -cienda, work done, business estate.  
 hallar [?], find.  
 hasta [Ar.], until.  
 hay [*ha y*], there is (are).  
 herma-na, sister, -nita, little sister.  
 -no [L. *germanus*, german; full brother], brother.  
 hermoso [L. *formosus*, well FORMED], beautiful.  
 hi-ja, daughter. -jo [L. *filius*], son.  
 hom-bre [L. *homo*], man. -brón, big man. -brezuelo, small man.  
 honradez, honesty, honor.  
 hora, HOUR.  
 humedad, dampness.

## I.

- idioma, *m.*, idiom; language.  
 igual, EQUAL.  
 infeliz, unhappy.  
 in-glés, English. -glaterra, England.  
 inmóvil, immovable.  
 inscribir, inscribe.  
 instancia, urgency.  
 intentar, intend; try, attempt.  
 interrumpir, interrupt.  
 in-trepidez, intrepidity. -trépido, intrepid.

## J.

- jardín, *m.*, garden.  
 José, Joseph.  
 jóven [L. *juvenis*], YOUNG.  
 Juan, John.

## L.

- largo, long, large: á la —, along.  
 lavandera, LAUNDRESS, washer-woman.  
 lección, *f.*, lesson.  
 leche [L. *lact-em*, acc.] *f.*, milk.  
 leer [L. *legere*], read.  
 lejos [L. *laxus*], far off.  
 lengua, TONGUE; language.  
 libro, book.  
 limosna, ALMS.  
 lindo [L. *limpidus*], pretty.  
 lisonjear [L. *laudare*, praise ?], flatter.  
 lo-co [?], mad. -cura, madness.  
 lo-gro [L. *lucrum*], gain. -grar, gain; succeed.  
 lucir, shine.  
 luego [L. *locus*, place], on the spot, - immediately.

## LL.

- llama, flame.  
 llamar [L. *clamare*], call.  
 lle-gada, arrival. -gar [L. *plicare*, fold ?], arrive; join; succeed.  
 lle-nar, FILL. -no [L. *plenus*], FULL.

## M.

- madre, mother. ['Madridian.'  
 madrileño, inhabitant of Madrid,

**madrugar** [L. *maturus*, early, ripe],  
 rise early; anticipate, contrive.  
**ma-estra**, mistress. -**estro**, MASTER.  
 -**gistrado**, magistrate.  
**malo** [L. *-lus*], bad.  
**mandar**, COMMAND, order.  
**ma-necita**, -**necilla**, little hand. -**no**,  
 [L. *-nus*], *f.* hand.  
**manifestar**, manifest, declare, say,  
**manza-na** [fr. a Pers. name], apple.  
**maña** [L. *manus*, hand?], skill.  
**mañana** [L. *mane*], morning.  
**mariposa** [?], butterfly.  
**marqués**, marquis.  
**marroquí**, Maroquee.  
**máscara**, *f.*, masker; mask.  
**mayor**, greater.  
**me-dida**, measure. -**dir** [L. *-tiri*],  
 MEASURE.  
**menear** [L. *manus*, hand], move.  
**menester** [L. *ministerium*], *m.*, ne-  
 cessity; office.  
**men-guar**, decay, fail. -**os** [L.  
*minus*], least.  
**mentir** [L. *-ri*], lie.  
**mes** [L. *mens*], *m.*, MONTH.  
**mesa** [L. *mensa*], table.  
**mezclar**, MIX.  
**modo**, mode, manner.  
**molesto**, tiresome.  
**molino**, MILL.  
**monarca**, *m.*, monarch.  
**mono**, MONKEY.  
**morir**, die.  
**mosquetero**, musketeer.  
**mover**, move.  
**mozo** [L. *mustus*, fresh], boy.  
**mucha-cha**, girl. -**chilla**, little girl.  
 -**chillo**, little boy. -**cho** [?] boy.

**mucho** [L. *multus*], much.  
**mujer** [L. *mulier*], woman.  
**mundo** [L. *-dus*], world.  
**muy** [ak. to *mucho*], very.

## N.

**nacer** [L. *nascere* for *nasci*], be born.  
**nariz** [L. *-ris*], *f.*, NOSE.  
**negar**, DENY.  
**negocio**, affair.  
**negro** [L. *niger*], black.  
**ni-ña**, -**ño**, [?], child (*f.*, *m.*).  
**nobleza**, nobility.  
**noche** [L. *nox*], *f.*, NIGHT.

## O.

**obispo**, bishop.  
**obra** [L. *pl.* of *opus*], work.  
**ocupar**, occupy.  
**ofender**, offend.  
**ofrecer**, offer.  
**oir** [L. *audire*], hear.  
**ojo** [L. *oculus*], EYE.  
**o-la** [cf. Fr. *houle*], wave. -**leada**,  
 surge.  
**oler** [L. *olere*, ak. to *odor*], smell.  
**onza**, ounce (= \$16).  
**orgullo** [cf. Fr. *orgueil*], pride.  
**oso** [L. *ursus*], bear.  
**ostentar**, show.  
**otorgar**, AUTHORIZE; execute.  
**oro** [L. *aurum*], gold.  
**oveja** [L. *ovis*], EWE, sheep.

## P.

**padre** [L. *pater*], FATHER.  
**pagar**, PAY.  
**pájaro** [L. *passer*, sparrow], bird.

palabra [ak. to E. *parole*], word.  
 pa-n [L. *-nis*], *m.*, bread. -nadero,  
 baker.  
 Papa, pope.  
 papel, *m.*, paper; *fig.*, show.  
 para [L. *per ad*], for; to.  
 parar [L. *-re*, prepare], stop.  
 parecer, appear.  
 pár-roco, PARSON, priest. -roquia,  
 PARISH.  
 pa-sear, walk. -seo, *m.*, public-  
 walk.  
 pastor, shepherd; pastor.  
 pecho [L. *pectus*], breast; courage;  
 patience.  
 pedir [L. *petere*], ask.  
 pedrecita, dim. of piedra [L. *petra*],  
 stone.  
 peligro [L. *periculum*], *m.* danger.  
 pequeño [Celt.], small.  
 pertenecer, pertain, belong.  
 perder [L. *-re*], lose.  
 pere-za [L. *pigritia*], idleness. -zozo,  
 idle.  
 perla, pearl.  
 permiso, permission.  
 pero [L. *per hoc*], but.  
 perro [?], dog.  
 pe-sado, heavy. -sar [L. *pensare*],  
 weigh. -so, weight.  
 pi-car, PECK. -co, bill.  
 pié [L. *pes*], *m.*, FOOT.  
 pintar, PAINT.  
 plañir [ak. to E. *plaint*], lament.  
 pla-ta, silver; PLATE. -teado, sil-  
 vered.  
 pluma, pen.  
 pobre, POOR.  
 poco [L. *paucus*], little.

pode-r [pop. L. *potere*], be able, can.  
 -rosamente, POWERFULLY.  
 policía, police.  
 poner [L. *-re*], put.  
 po-sada, inn, hotel. -sar [L. *pausa-*  
*re*], repose, lodge.  
 precio, PRICE.  
 preguntar [L. *per-contari*], ask.  
 prelado, prelate.  
 presentar, present.  
 príncipe, PRINCE.  
 primavera [L. *ver*, spring], spring.  
 procurar, try.  
 pronunciar, utter, repeat.  
 propósito : á —, suitably.  
 pueblo, PEOPLE.  
 puerta [L. *porta*], gate; door.  
 pues [L. *post*], then.  
 pulga [L. *pulex*], FLEA.  
 pupila, ward.

## Q.

quedar [L. *quietus*, quiet], remain,  
 be.  
 quejar [?], complain.  
 que-rer [L. *quaerere*], wish; like;  
 want. -rido, wished; loved; dear.  
 quitar [ak. to E. *quit*], take away.

## R.

razón, *f.*, reason.  
 real, ROYAL.  
 recibir, receive.  
 recuerdo [E. *record*], remembrance.  
 reducir, reduce.  
 reforzar, increase.  
 rei-na, queen. -no, kingdom; REIGN.  
 replicar, reply.

resolver, resolve.  
 re-sponder, answer. —spuesta, answer.  
 retirar, retire.  
 rey [L. *rex*], king.  
 ribera, river side.  
 ri-co, rich. —queza, richness.  
 rodear [L. *rotare*], surround.  
 rogar [L. *-re*], ask.  
 romper [L. *rumpere*], break.  
 rostro [L. *-trum*], face.  
 rubí, *m.*, ruby.  
 rueda [L. *rota*], wheel.  
 ruido [L. *rugitus*], noise.

## S.

sala, hall.  
 saber [L. *-pere*], know.  
 satisfecho, satisfied.  
 salir [L. *-re*, leap], go out; happen.  
 sed [L. *sitis*], *f.*, thirst. —iento, thirsty.  
 seguir [L. *sequere*, for *sequi*], follow.  
 seguramente, assuredly.  
 semana [L. *septem*, SEVEN], week.  
 semejante, SIMILAR.  
 sentar, SEAT; fit.  
 seña, SIGN.  
 seño-r, SIR; gentleman; lord. —ra, lady; madam. —rita, (young)lady, miss.  
 séquito, SUITE, attendance.  
 servir, serve.  
 sí [L. *sic*, so], yes.  
 siguiente [*seguir*], following.  
 silla [L. *sed-ula*], chair; SEAT.  
 sin [L. *sine*], without: — embargo, nevertheless.

sobrino [L. *-nus*], nephew.  
 solo, alone.  
 soltero [L. *solitarius*], unmarried, single.  
 sortija [L. *sors*, fate?], ring.  
 subir [L. *-re*], rise, mount.  
 suela, sole.  
 sufrir, suffer.

## T.

también [L. *tam bene*], also.  
 tarde, late; evening.  
 temblar, TREMBLE.  
 temer [L. *timere*], fear. —oso, fearful; TIMID.  
 tener [L. *-nere*], hold, have.  
 tempestad, *f.*, tempest, storm.  
 tentar [L. *-re*], try.  
 testamento, testament, will.  
 tí-a, aunt. —o [Gr. *theios*], unclé.  
 tierra [L. *terra*], land.  
 ti-rar [ak. to E. *tear*], draw. —ro, span of horses.  
 tocar, TOUCH.  
 tolerar, tolerate, endure.  
 tomar [?], take.  
 torcer [L. *torquere*], twist.  
 trabajar [cf. Fr. *travailler*], work.  
 traje [L. *trahere*, draw: cf. Germ. *Tracht*], suit, apparel.  
 tratar, TREAT.  
 través [L. *trans-versus*], inclination; á —, across.  
 turba [L.], throng.  
 turco, Turk.  
 tutear [L. *tu*, THOU], thou (say 'thou' to).

## U.

unir, unite.  
uso, use.

## V.

va-ler, be worth ; be valid : **válgame**  
Dios ! bless me ! -liente, valiant,  
brave ; strong.  
vano, vain.  
vencer, VANQUISH.  
vender [L. -re], sell.  
venir, come.  
ver [L. *videre*], see.  
verano [L. *ver*, spring], summer.  
verde, green ; verdant.  
vez [L. *vix*], *f.*, time.  
vida [L. *vita*], life.

vidrio [L. *vitrum*], glass.  
viejo [L. *vetulus* (-tus, old)], old.  
vir-tud, *f.*, virtue. -tuoso, vir-  
tuous.  
vistoso [*visto* (*ver*), seen], beauti-  
ful, sightly.  
vivir, live.  
volar [L. -re], fly.  
vol-tear, REVOLVE ; overturn. -ver,  
return : — á, again.

## Y.

ya [L. *jam.*], now.  
yacer [L. *jacere*], lie.  
yegua [L. *equa*], mare.

## Z.

zapato [?], shoe.

## II. ENGLISH-SPANISH VOCABULARY.

Articles, numerals and pronouns are omitted. The gender of Spanish masculines in *-o*, feminines in *-a*, and sex-words is not given. Spanish cognates of less evident affinity are in SMALL CAPS, and brief etymological hints are added for unrelated words. If that is done already in the Spanish-English Vocabulary, reference is made thus [I].

### A.

abandon, abandonar.  
above, sobre; *adj.*, superior.  
accustom, be *-ed*, acostumar.  
acquaintance, CONOCIDO [*-cer*, know].  
act, acción, *f.*  
adornment, adorno.  
advance, adelantar [L. *ante*, before].  
affair, asunto [L. *asumere*, assume].  
after, después [L. *post*] de.  
alarmed, alarmado.  
allow, admitir, permitir.  
already, ya [I].  
also, también [I].  
always, siempre [L. *semper*].  
amaze, asombrar [*sombra*, shade].  
American, americano.  
angel, ángel, *m.*  
angry, enfadado [ak. to E. *infatuated* ?].  
answer, responder.  
ap-pear, PARECER.  
apple, manzana [I]. *-tree*, manzano.

apply, aplicar.  
appoint, nombrar, nominar.  
Ara-bian, *-bic*, de Arabia, árabe.  
are, son [L. *sunt*]; están [L. *stant*].  
argue, argüir.  
arise, levantarse [L. *levare*, raise].  
arm, brazo [I].  
army, ejército [L. *exercitus*].  
arrive, llegar [I].  
Arthur, Arturo.  
as, cuanto; [*after* tanto] todo.  
— soon —, luego [I] que.  
ascribe, atribuir.  
ask, rogar [I]; preguntar [I]; (*beg*), pedir [I].  
assassinate, asesinar.  
assure, asegurar.  
attack, atacar.  
attain, alcanzar [Ar.].  
attentive, atento.  
attribute, atribuir.  
aunt, tía [I].

### B.

bad, malo [I].  
banquet, banquete, *m.*



barbarian, bárbaro.

Basque, Vascuence, *m.*

battle, batalla.

be, ser [L. *sedere*, SIT].

beat, azotar [Ar.].

beautiful, hermoso [I].

because, porque [*por que*].

before, antes [I] de.

begin, comenzar; empezar [L. *pes*, foot ?].

behave, portarse. -vior, conducta, crianza [*criar*, create, breed].

behold, mirar [L. *mirari*, regard].

believe, creer [I].

Belgian, belgo.

bench, banco.

big, grande.

black, negro [I].

body, cuerpo.

boil, bullir.

book, libro [L. *-ber*].

born; be —, nacer [I].

boy, muchacho; (*lad, servant*) mozo [I]. little —, muchachillo.

brave, valiente.

breakfast, almuerzo [L. *morsus*, bite ?]; *v.* almorzar.

break, romper [I].

bring, traer [L. *trahere*]: — before, presentar.

brother, hermano [I]. little —, hermanito.

build, edificar.

but, pero [I].

butter (Sp.) manteca [Basque ?], (Mex.) mantequilla.

buy, comprar [I].

## C.

café, café, *m.*

call, llamar [I].

can, poder [I].

cane, bastón [I], *m.* -rap, bastonada, bastonazo.

captain, capitán, jefe ('CHIEF').

care, cuidar [L. *cogitare*, think].

Castilian, castellano.

catch, asir [L. *apisci*].

cause, causar.

celebrate, celebrar

cent, centavo.

century, siglo [L. *saeculum*].

certain, cierto. -ly, ciertamente.

chair, silla [I].

change, CAMBIAR; *n.* cambio.

chapter, capítulo.

character, carácter, *m.*

Charles, Carlos.

chestnut, castaño.

child, niño, -ña [?].

Christian, cristiano.

cigar, cigarro, tabaco.

city, CIUDAD, *f.*

cling, adherir.

colonel, coronel.

colony, colonia.

Columbus, Colón.

combination, combinación, *f.*

commission, comisión, *f.*

companion, compañero.

company, compañía.

complain, quejar [I].

complete, acabar [I].

concerning, sobre [L. *super*].

condemn, condenar.

confess, confesar.

congratulate, dar la enhorabuena  
 [*en, hora, buena* I] á.  
 conquer, vencer [I].  
 consequence, consecuencia.  
 consider, considerar.  
 constable, alguacil [Ar.].  
 consult, consultar.  
 contented, contento.  
 cook, COCER.  
 cordially, cordialmente.  
 correct, corregir.  
 count, contar.  
 country, país, *m.*; campo. go into  
 the —, ir al campo.  
 courage, coraje, *m.*  
 court, corte, *f.*  
 courtier, cortesano.  
 cousin, primo, prima [L. *-mus*].  
 cowardly, cobarde; — act, cobardía.  
 criminal, reo [L. *reus*].  
 crisis, crisis, *f.*  
 custom, costumbre, *m.*

## D.

dagger, puñal [I], *m.* —thrust, pu-  
 ñalada.  
 dare, atrevirse [cf. *atrevido* I].  
 dark, oscuro.  
 date, fecha [I].  
 day, día, *m.*  
 dear, caro [I]; querido [I].  
 death, muerte, *f.*  
 debt, deuda [L. *debita*].  
 decay, menguar [I].  
 de-ceit, engaño [I]. —ceive, enga-  
 ñar.  
 defect, defecto.  
 delay, tardar.  
 deny, negar.

depart, partir.  
 dependency, dependencia, *f.*  
 deprive, privar.  
 desert, desertar.  
 desire, DESEAR.  
 determine, determinar.  
 despise, despreciar.  
 dialect, dialecto.  
 dialogue, diálogo.  
 die, morir.  
 different, diferente.  
 difficult, difícil.  
 digest, DIGERIR.  
 diligence, diligencia.  
 diligent, diligente; aplicado.  
 dine, comer [cf. EAT].  
 direct, dirigir.  
 disarrange, desordenar.  
 discern, discernir.  
 discover, descubrir.  
 displeased: be —, disgustarse.  
 disposition, disposición, *f.*  
 distinguish, distinguir.  
 disturb, desasosegar [*sosegar* (*sub  
 siccare*, dry up?) calm].  
 ditch, foso [L. *fossum*].  
 doctor, doctor; médico.  
 dollar, (Sp.) duro [L. *-rus*, hard];  
 (Mex.) peso [*-sar* (I), weigh].  
 door, puerta.  
 doubt, dudar.  
 drawing, dibujo [?].  
 drink, beber [I].  
 duty, deber [I], *m.*

## E.

ear, oreja [L. *auricula* (*dim. of  
 -ris*)].  
 earth, tierra.

ea-sy, fácil. —sily, fácilmente.  
 eat, comer [L. *cum edere*, EAT].  
 education, educación, *f*.  
 effort, esfuerzo.  
 embark, embarcar.  
 embajador, embajador.  
 enemy, enemigo.  
 engagement, cita [ak. to E. *cite*].  
 England, Inglaterra.  
 English, inglés.  
 entertainment, tertulia [orig., clubs  
 reading Tertullian].  
 enter, entrar, venir en.  
 entrust, confiar.  
 equal, igual.  
 err, errar. —ant, andante [-*dar*, cf.  
 go].  
 establish, establecer.  
 estimable, estimable.  
 Europe, Europa.  
 eve, víspera [L. *vespera*].  
 evening, tarde, *f*.; *adj.*, de la tarde.  
 every, cada [I].  
 evident, evidente.  
 exercise, ejercicio.  
 expend, expender.  
 explain, explicar.  
 express, expresar.  
 expulsion, expulsión, *f*.  
 eye, ojo [I].

## F.

fail, declinar.  
 faith, fe, *f*.  
 fall, caer [L. *cadere*].  
 Fanny, Paca.  
 father, padre.  
 fault, FALTA; culpa.  
 favor, favor, *m*.

fear, temer [I].  
 feather, pluma.  
 feel, sentir.  
 few, algunos; pocos [cf. -*co*].  
 fickleness, ligereza.  
 final, final.  
 find, hallar [?].  
 finish, acabar [I]; terminar.  
 flatter, lisonjear [I].  
 flower, FLOR, *f*. little —, florecita.  
 fly, volar.  
 follow, seguir [I].  
 food, comida [-*mer*, I].  
 foot, pié [I], *m*. little —, piccito,  
 —cillo.  
 fort, plaza ('place').  
 for, por [L. *pro*]; para [I]: cf.  
 Exerc. XXI, fine print.  
 force, fuerza; *v*. forzar.  
 forget, olvidar [L. *oblivisci*].  
 form, forma.  
 for-tune, fortuna; (fate) suerte [L.  
*sors*]. —tunately, por fortuna.  
 fragrant, oloroso [oler, I].  
 France, Francia.  
 Frederick, Federico.  
 frequent, *tr.*, frecuentar.  
 friend, amigo, —ga.  
 fun, burla: make — of, burlarse de.

## G.

gain, GANAR.  
 garden, jardín, *m*.  
 gate, puerta.  
 gather, coger [L. *cogere*].  
 general, general.  
 gentleman, caballero, señor [I];  
 (us'ly nobleman) gentilhomme.  
 genuine, verdadero [L. *verus*, true].

German, alemán. -ny, Alemania.  
 get into, caber [L. *capere*, hold, contain; be contained].  
 gird, ceñir [L. *cingere*].  
 girl, muchacha [?]; (*child*) niña [?]. little —, muchachilla.  
 give, dar [I].  
 glad; be —, alegrarse [I].  
 grateful, AGRADECIDO.  
 greatness, grandeza.  
 Greek, griego.  
 green, verde.  
 gun, fusil [I], *m*.  
 groan, gemir [I].  
 go, andar [pop. L. *amb-itare* (L. *ire*)]; ir [-*re*]. — to bed, acostarse [L. *costa*, rib, side].  
 God, Dios [L. *deus*], *m*.  
 good, bueno [I].  
 Goth, godo. -ic, gótico.  
 gold, oro [I].  
 guard, guardia.  
 guilty, culpable.  
 Gustavus Adolphus, Gustavo Adolfo.

## H.

hair, cabellos, *pl*. [L. *capillos* (-*ful*, head)].  
 hall, sala.  
 hand, mano [I], *f*. little —, manecito, -cilla.  
 happy, feliz.  
 hardly, apenas [I]; casi [L. *quasi*].  
 harmony, armonía, el armonioso.  
 hat, sombrero (*sombra*, shade).  
 hatred, odio.  
 have, tener [I]; *aux.* haber [I]: — just, acabar [I], *de*.

headache, dolor de cabeza [I].  
 hear, oír [I].  
 heart, CORAZÓN [L. *cor*], *m*.  
 heaven, cielo [L. *caelum*].  
 home, casa; at —, en casa.  
 honestly, honradamente.  
 honor, honor, *m*.  
 horse, caballo [pop. L. -*lus*].  
 hotel, fonda [?], posada [I].  
 hour, HORA.  
 house, casa [L].  
 how, como [L. *quo-modo*]. — long? cuanto tiempo hace?  
 human, humano.  
 humble, humillar.  
 hun-ger, hambre [L. *fames*], *f*. be -gry, tener hambre.  
 hunt, cazar ('CHASE').  
 hurtful, nocido [L. -*cere*, hurt].

## I.

Iberian, ibero.  
 idiom, idioma, *m*.  
 ignorant, ignorante.  
 ignore, ignorar.  
 illumine, ALUMBRAR.  
 imagine, figurarse.  
 immediately, luego [I].  
 imitation, imitación, *f*.  
 imperfectly, imperfectamente.  
 important, importante.  
 impossible, imposible.  
 in, en. — order to, para.  
 inclination, inclinación, *f*.  
 indeed, de veras.  
 Indian, indio.  
 infirmity, enfermedad, *f*.  
 influence, influencia.  
 intention, intención, *f*.

interesting, interesante.  
 interrupt, interrumpir.  
 intrepid, intrépido. -ity, intrepidez, *f*.  
 introduce, presentar.  
 instructed, instruido.  
 in-quire, preguntar [I]. -quisitive, preguntón.  
 invalid, enfermo.  
 invite, convidar.  
 island, isla [L. *insula*].

## J.

John, Juan.

## K.

keep, guardar : — away, apartarse.  
 kill, matar [L. *mactare*].  
 kindness, bondad.  
 king, rey [I].  
 knight, caballero.  
 know, saber [I]; (*be acquainted with*) conocer [I.]

## L.

lack, faltar ('FAIL').  
 lady, señora, -rita [I].  
 lament, plañir [I].  
 language, lengua; lenguaje, *m*.; idioma, *m*.  
 last, último; at —, al fin.  
 Latin, latín; *adj.* latino.  
 laughable, digno de risa [L. *-sus*].  
 lazy, perezoso [I].  
 learn, aprender [I]. -ed, docto.  
 leave, dejar [I]; partir.  
 lesson, lección, *f*.  
 left (side), izquierdo [?].  
 lend, prestar [L. *præ-stare*].

Leo, León.  
 let, dejar [I] á.  
 letter, carta [I]. -carrier, cartero.  
 liberty, libertad, *f*.  
 lie, mentir [I].  
 like, *tr.*, querer [I].  
 like, *adj.*, parecido. be —, parecerse [I] á.  
 lion, león, *m*.  
 live, vivir; (*reside*) residir.  
 lo! mirad! mire V. [*-rar*, see].  
 lofty, alto.  
 look for, buscar [I].  
 long (time), largo tiempo.  
 Lord (*God*), Señor [I].  
 lose, perder [I].  
 Louis, Luis.  
 love, *v.*, amar; *n.*, amor, *m*.  
 loyal, LEAL.

## M.

mail, correo [I].  
 man, hombre [I], *m*.  
 mare, yegua [I].  
 maritime, marítimo.  
 Mary, María.  
 master, maestro.  
 match, fósforo; (Mex.) cerilla [L. *cera*, wax].  
 matter, cosa, *v.*, importar.  
 May, mayo.  
 mean, querer decir ('wish to say').  
 measure, MEDIR [I].  
 meet, encontrar [I].  
 memory, memoria.  
 merit, mérito. -orious, meritorio.  
 Mexican, mejicano.  
 midst, medio.  
 milk, leche [I].

minister, ministro.  
 minute, minuto.  
 misery, miseria.  
 miss, señorita [I]; (with given name)  
 doña [I].  
 mission, misión, *f.*  
 mistress, maestra.  
 mistaken; be—, engañarse [I];  
 equivocarse; errar. make a —,  
 engañarse.  
 mister, señor [I]; in Sp. don (be-  
 fore given name; *L. dominus*); don  
 señor (when both the given and  
 family name are expressed).  
 mix, MEZCLAR. -ture, mezcla.  
 modern, moderno.  
 Monday, lunes [*L. luna*, moon], *m.*  
 money, dinero [I].  
 month, mes [I], *m.*  
 Moor, Moro.  
 mortal, mortal.  
 mother, madre.  
 motive, motivo.  
 mountain, monte, *m.*, sierra.  
 mourn, llorar [*L. plorare*, weep].  
 mouth, boca [I]. big —, bocaza.  
 move, mover.  
 Mrs., *see* mistress.  
 much, mucho [I].  
 musical, musical.  
 Mussulman, musulmano.  
 must, deber [I], ser necesario.

## N.

national, nacional.  
 name, nombre [*L. nomen*], *m.*  
 nation, nación.  
 nature, naturaleza.  
 Nazarean, nazareno.

necessary, necesario, preciso; me-  
 nester [I].  
 need, necesitar, *n.* menester [I], *m.*  
 neighbor, vecino [*L. vicinus*].  
 nevertheless, sin embargo [I].  
 news, noticia. -paper, gaceta.  
 next, próximo.  
 night, noche [I], *f.*  
 noise, ruido [I].  
 north, norte, *m.*  
 nose, nariz [I].  
 now, ahora [*L. hora*, HOUR].

## O.

obey, obedecer.  
 object, objeto.  
 oblige, obligar; precisar.  
 offend, ofender.  
 officer, oficial.  
 old, viejo [I].  
 once, una vez [I].  
 open, abrir [I].  
 order, ordenar.  
 ordinarily, ordinariamente.  
 original, original.  
 ought, deber [I].  
 over, sobre [I].  
 owe, deber [I].

## P.

pain, PENA.  
 palace, palacio, castillo.  
 pale, pálido.  
 paper, papel, *m.*  
 pardon, perdonar.  
 parents, padres ('fathers,' § 26 *a*).  
 park, parque, *m.*  
 part, parte, *f.*  
 pass, pasar.



passion, pasión, *f.*  
 patience, paciencia.  
 pay, PAGAR.  
 peninsula, península.  
 perform, desempeñar [I].  
 pearl, perla.  
 permit, permitir.  
 Peru, Perú, *m.*  
 perseverance, perseverancia.  
 physician, médico.  
 picture, pintura.  
 pity, lástima [L. *blasphemia*].  
 place, lugar [L. *locus*].  
 poor, POBRE.  
 point, apunte.  
 porch, portal, *m.*  
 post (office), correo [I].  
 pound, libra.  
 poverty, POBREZA.  
 power, potencia.  
 praise, alabar [L. *laudare*].  
 prefer, preferir.  
 preparation, preparación, *f.* [I].  
 pretty, bonito [L. *-nus*, good], lindo  
 prevail, prevalecer.  
 prevent, prevenir.  
 probable, probable.  
 produce, producir.  
 promise, prometer.  
 proportion, proporción, *f.*  
 prudence, prudencia.  
 punish, castigar.  
 pupil, discípulo.  
 put, poner [I].  
 pyramid, pirámido.

## Q.

queen, reina [I].  
 quit, abandonar.

## R.

race, raza.  
 railroad, ferro-carril [I], *m.*  
 rain, llover [L. *pluere*].  
 raise up, erguir [L. *erigere*, erect].  
 rarely, rara vez [I].  
 reach, alcanzar [I].  
 read, leer [I].  
 realize, realizar.  
 receive, recibir; acoger [L. *adcolli-  
gere*].  
 regard, mirar [L. *-ri*].  
 rejoice, alegrarse [I].  
 relate, contar ('ac-COUNT').  
 relative, relativo.  
 remain, quedar [I].  
 remembrance, recuerdo [I].  
 remote, remoto.  
 remove, quitar [I].  
 repeat, repasar.  
 repent, arrepentirse.  
 require, requerir.  
 re-solute, resuelto. —solve, resolver;  
*intr.* resolverse.  
 respect, respeto.  
 rest, descanso [*causar*, tire, I].  
 return, volver.  
 revolt, sublevar [L. *levare*, raise].  
 rich, rico. very —, ricacho. —ness,  
 riqueza.  
 ridiculous, ridículo.  
 right, derecho [L. *directus*].  
 rise, levantarse [L. *-vare*, lift].  
 road, camino [Celt].  
 roast-beef, asada [I].  
 robber, ladrón [L. *latro*].  
 roguish, burlón. [I.]  
 room, cuarto [I]; aposento [*posar*

## S.

save, SALVAR; ahorrar [?].  
 savage, salvaje, *m.*  
 say, decir [I].  
 schoolmate, condiscípulo.  
 search, registrar.  
 season, estación [I], *f.*  
 seat, puesto; *v.* sentar [I].  
 see, ver [I].  
 seek, buscar [I]. — after, pedir.  
 seize, coger [I].  
 select, escoger [*coger*, I].  
 sell, vender [I].  
 seem, parecer [I].  
 sensation, sentimiento.  
 ser-vant, criado [*crear*, create]; ser-  
 vidor. —*ve*, servir.  
 shine, lucir.  
 short, pequeño [I].  
 shun, huir [L. *fugere*].  
 sigh, gemir [I].  
 silence, silencio.  
 sing, cantar [I].  
 sir, SEÑOR (*expr. more respect*); ca-  
 ballero (*more equality*).  
 sire, SEÑOR.  
 sister, hermana [I]. little —, her-  
 manita.  
 skilful, hábil [L. *-lis*].  
 slave, esclavo, -*va*.  
 sleep, dormir.  
 small, chico [?]; pequeño [I].  
 smell, oler [I].  
 so (much), tan.  
 soldier, soldado.  
 son, hijo [I].  
 sonorousness, lo sonoro.  
 soon, pronto. [ak. to E. *prompt.*]

sorry; be —, sentir.  
 soul, alma [I].  
 soup, sopa.  
 south, SUR.  
 Spain, España.  
 Spaniard, Español.  
 Spanish, español.  
 speak, hablar [I].  
 spring, primavera [I].  
 squire, ESCUDERO.  
 start, salir [I].  
 station, estación, *f.*  
 St. Helena, Santa Helena.  
 still, también [I].  
 stomach, estómago.  
 stone, piedra [I].  
 stranger, extranjero.  
 street, calle [I], *f.*  
 strong, fuerte; potente; valiente.  
 study, estudiar; *n.*, estudio.  
 succeed, llegar [I].  
 suddenly, SUBITAMENTE; de re-  
 pente [L. *repens*, sudden].  
 suffer, sufrir.  
 suit, traje [I].  
 summer, verano [I].  
 Sunday, domingo [L. *dominus*,  
 Lord].  
 support, mantenimiento.  
 surely, ciertamente.  
 Sweden, Suecia.  
 sword, espada [L. *spatha*, spattle,  
 sword.]

## T.

table, mesa [I].  
 take, tomar [?]. — leave, despe-  
 dirse. — a walk, dar un paseo.  
 talent, talento, *m.*

teach, enseñar [L. *signare*, indicate]. -er, maestro.

teethe, dentar.

thank, agradecer. -s, gracias [I].

then, entonces [L. *tunc*]; en ese caso.

there is (are), hay [I].

thief, ladrón [L. *latro.*], *m.*

thing, cosa; objeto.

think, pensar.

time, tiempo; vez [I], *f.*

tiresome, tedioso.

title, título.

together, juntos ('joined').

to-morrow, mañana [I].

tongue, lengua.

too, — much, demasiado [más].

touch, TOCAR.

traitor, traidor.

translation, traducción, *f.*

travel, viajar [L. *via*, way].

treat, tratar.

tree, árbol [L. *-bor*]. little —, arbolito.

tremble, temblar.

triumph, triunfo.

trunk, baúl [?], *m.*

truth, verdad, *f.*

try, tentar [I].

twist, torcer [I].

## U.

ugly, feo [I].

umbrella, paraguas [*para agua*], *m.*

uncle, tío [I].

understand, entender [I].

undertaking, em-presa [L. *prehendere*, take].

unfortunate, desgraciado.

unite, unir.

unhappy, infeliz.

until, hasta [I].

urge, suplicar.

useful, útil.

## V.

valor, valor, *m.*

vanquish, VENCER.

various, vario.

very, muy [I].

vicissitude, vicisitud, *f.*

virtue, virtud, *f.*; -tuous, virtuoso.

## W.

wait for, aguardar.

wake, despertar, [L. *expergere*, *waken*]; — up, despertarse.

walk, paseo, [*short*] vuelta [*volver*, I].

want, querer [I]; [*lack*], carecer [I].

war, GUERRA.

ward, pupila.

wary, cauto [*'cautious'*]; discreto.

wash, lavar [L. *-re*].

waste, GASTAR.

way, VIA; mode. **this** —, por aquí.

weak, débil [L. *-lis*].

wealth, riqueza.

week, semana [I].

well, bien [L. *bene*].

whatever, cualquiera [§ 53] cosa que.

when, cuando [I].

whether, si [I].

whispering, susurro.

white, blanco.

**whoever**, quienquiera [§ 53].

**why** ? porqué ? [*por que*].

**wind**, viento.

**wish**, querer [I].

**within**, dentro [L. *de intro*].

**without**, sin [L. *-ne*].

**woman**, mujer [I]. **bad** —, muje-  
rona; **large** —, mujeracha.

**wool**, lana [L.].

**word**, palabra [I].

**work**, trabajar [I]; *n.*, trabajo, obra.

**world**, mundo.

**wound**, herir [L. *ferire*, strike].

**writ-e**, escribir [L. *scribere*]. **-er**,  
escritor. **-ing desk**, escritorio.

**wrong**: **do** —, hacer mal.

**Y.**

**year**, año [I].

**yesterday**, ayer [L. *ab heri*].

**young**: **JOVEN** [I].

# INDEX.

References are to paragraphs. All verbs, simple or compound, that deviate in any way, save graphically (§ 80-81), from the three regular model verbs (§ 77), are enumerated. Component parts of compound verbs are here separated by a hyphen when the simple verb occurs also alone.

- a*: pronunc., 9.—final lost, 15. a.
- d*: with *el*, 19; 65.—with direct obj., 110.—with infinit., 160. A. 2.
- ab-negar*: cf. *negar*.
- abolir*: defect., 89. b.
- abrir*: irr. part., 88.
- ab-solver*: cf. *solver*.
- ab-sonar*: cf. *sonar*.
- abs-tener* = *tener*, 88.
- abs-traer* = *traer*, 88.
- abuñolar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- acabar*: with *de*, 160. A.—idiom. use, 178.
- acaecer*: impers., 89. a.
- acaso*: 171.
- accent: history, 1. A.—tone-acc't, 4.—acc't-mark, 4 (end), 5.—on *mí, tú, tí, él, sí*, 54. 4.—on interr., 5. f, 67.
- acertar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- acho*: suffix, 35. 1.
- a-clocar*, cf. *clocar*.
- acollar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- acontecer*: impers., 89. a.
- acordar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A. (reg. as 'tune').
- acornar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- a-costar*: cf. *costar*.
- acrecentar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. a.
- ada*: suffix, 35. 1. note.
- a-decentar*: cf. *decentar*.
- adestrar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- ad-herir*: cf. *herir*.
- adjectives: history, 37.—plur., 39.—fem., 40.—comparis., 42-4.—as adv., 98.—agree-m't, 112.—position, 113 (different sense, 113. note).
- a-dormir*: cf. *dormir*.
- adquirir*: 84. A. note 2.
- aducir*: cf. *ducir*, 88.
- adverbs: history, 93.—single and phrases, 94.—comparis., 97.—in *-mente*, 97.—adject's, as, 98.—negative, 99.
- advertir*: *sentir*-cl., 84. B.
- aferrar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- a-follar*: cf. *follar*.
- aforar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A. A. (reg. as 'gauge').
- 'ago': rendered, 177.
- agorar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- aguerrir*, defect., 89. b.
- alborear*, impers., 89. a.
- alebrar*: *pensar*-cl. 84. A.
- alentar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- algo*: deriv. 53.—indef., 70. a.—use, 131.
- alguien*: deriv., 53.—indef., 70. a.
- ali-quebrar*: cf. *quebrar*.
- almorzar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- alongar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- alphabet: 2.
- alto*: comparis., 43.
- amanecer*: impers., 89. a.
- a-moblar*: cf. *moblar*.
- amolar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- a-mover*: cf. *mover*.
- andar*: irr. 88.—as auxil., 90. c.
- ante*: use 111.
- ante-decir* = *decir*, 88.

- antes de* : use, III.  
*ante-ver* = *ver*, 88.  
*apacentar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*apercollar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*apernar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*aportar* 'arrive' (fr. *puerto* 'port') : *pensar*-cl. 84. A. [Obs. *portar* 'carry', reg.]  
*apostar* 'bet' : *pensar*-cl. [reg. as 'post men'].  
*apretar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*a-probar* : cf. *probar*.  
*aquel* : dem. pr., 64. — position, 125.  
*aquello* : dem. pr., 64. — use, 127.  
*aquí* : 172.  
 arabic elements : p. 1, 2.  
*argüir* : *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
*arrecir* : defect., 89. b.  
*arrendar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*arrepentir* : *sentir*-cl., 84. B.  
 articles : history, 17. — cf. each.  
*-ds* : accent, 5. c.  
*ascender* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*a-sentir* : cf. *sentir*.  
*a-serrar* : cf. *serrar*.  
*asir* : irr., 88.  
*a-solar* : cf. *solar*.  
*a-soldar* : cf. *soldar*.  
*a-sonar* : cf. *sonar* ; (also reg.).  
*a-sosegar* : cf. *sosegar*.  
 assonance : 187.  
*a-tender* : cf. *tender*.  
*a-tener* : irr. = *tener*.  
*a-tentar* 'tap' : cf. *tentar* ; [reg. as 'attempt a crime'].  
*aterir* : defect., 89. b.  
*aterrar* 'level' : *pensar*-cl., 84. A. [reg. as 'terrify'].  
*atestar* 'cram' : *pensar*-cl., 84. A. [reg. as 'testify'].  
 atonic pronoun : history, 53. — cf. each.  
*a-traer* = *traer*, 88.  
*a-travesar* : cf. *travesar*.  
*atribuir* : *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
*a-tronar* : cf. *tronar*.  
 augmentat. suffixes : 35, 36, 46.  
*aun* : 5. b.  
*avalentar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*a-venir* = *venir*, 88.  
*a-ventar* : cf. *ventar*.  
*avergonzar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*-az* : accent of words in, 5. d.  
*-azo*, suff., 31. I., 35. I. note, 46.  
*azolar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*b* : pronunc., 11 ; for Lat. *þ*, I. C.  
*bajo* : comparis., 43.  
*bastar* : impers., 89. a.  
*ben-decir* = *decir*, 88.  
*bien* : comparis., 96.  
*bien-querer* : irr. = *querer*, 88.  
 'both' : expressed, 52.  
*bregar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*bueno* : or *buen*, 15. c. — comparis., 43. —  
*buscar* : with *d*, 110. 2.  
*c* : pronunc., 11. — or *ca*, 13. a., 80. — or *z*, 13. a., 80. — change to *cc* in verbs, 81.  
*caber* : irr., 88.  
*cada* : 53.  
*caer* : irr., 88.  
*calear* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
 capital letters : 16.  
*cardcter* : pl. 24. d.  
 Castilian : page 2.  
*cegar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*ceñir* : *pedir*-cl., 84. C. — loss of *i*, 13. c, 80.  
*cerner* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*cerrar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*-cete* : suffix, 35. 2.  
*ch* : pronunc., 11. — for Lat. *ct*, *ll*, I. C.  
*-cico* : suffix, 35. 2.  
*ciento* or *cien* : 15. b.  
*cierto* : 70. b.  
*-cillo* : suffix, 35. 2.  
*-cilo* : suffix, 35. 2.  
*cimentar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*circuir* : *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
*clockar*, *pensar*-cl. 84. A.  
*cocer* : 81. I.



- colar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*colegir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
*colgar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*comedir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
*comendar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*comenzar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
 comparison: of adj., 42  
 (irr. 43). — of adv., 96.  
*competir*: *pedir*-cl., 84.  
 C.  
*com-placer*: cf. *placer*,  
 88.  
*com-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
 compound (i. e. peri-  
 phrastic) tenses: 90.  
*com-probar*: cf. *probar*.  
*con*: with *mi* cor., 55. —  
 with infinit., 160. A. 3.  
*concernir*: impers., 89. a.  
*concertar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*concluir*: *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
 conditional: origin, 71.  
 c., 76. — irr., 86. 3. —  
 use, 147.  
*conducir*: irr., cf. *-ducir*.  
*conferir*: *sentir*-cl., 84. B.  
*confesar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*con-fluir*: cf. *fluir*.  
*con-mover*: cf. *mover*.  
*con-migo*: form'n, 55.  
*con-seguir*: cf. *seguir*.  
*con-sentir*: cf. *sentir*.  
*consigo*: form'n, 55.  
*consolar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
 consonants: history, I. c.  
 — pronunc., II.
- con-sonar*: cf. *sonar*.  
*constituir*: *huir*-cl., 84.  
 D.  
*constreñir*: *pedir*-cl. 84.  
 C. (loss of *i*, 13. c.)  
*construir*: *huir*-cl. 84.  
 D.  
*contar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*con-tender*: cf. *tender*.  
*con-tener* = *tener*, 88.  
*contigo*: form'n, 55.  
*con-torcer*: cf. *torcer*.  
*contr-acordar*: cf. *acor-*  
*dar*.  
 contraction: 19.  
*contra-decir* = *decir*, 88.  
*con-traer* = *traer*, 88.  
*contra-hacer*: cf. *hacer*,  
 88.  
*contra-poner* = *poner*,  
 88.  
*contra-venir* = *venir*, 88.  
*contribuir*: *huir*-cl., 84.  
 D.  
*controvertir*: *sentir*-cl.,  
 84. B.  
*con-venir*: irr. = *venir*,  
 88.  
*convertir*: *sentir*-cl., 84.  
 B.  
*cor-regir*: cf. *regir*.  
*costar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*creer*: cf. 80.  
*cubrir*: irr. part., 88.  
*cual*: indef. pr., 70. c.  
*cualquier(a)*: 53, 70. c.  
*cuan* or *cuanto*, 173.  
*d*: pronunc., II. — for  
 Lat. *t*, I. C. — lost in  
 imperat., 78.
- dar*: irr., 88.  
*date*: expressed, 114,  
 115.  
*de*: with *el*, 19, 65. — for  
 'than,' 19; with nouns,  
 111. — with infinit.,  
 160, A. I.  
*de-caer*: cf. *caer*, 88.  
*decentar*: *pensar*-cl., 84 A  
*decir*: irr., 88.  
*de-ducir*: cf. *ducir*, 88.  
 defective verbs, 89.  
*defender*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*deferir*: *sentir*-cl., 84. B.  
*degollar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
 definite article: history,  
 17. — form, 18. — idi-  
 om. use, 107. — omis-  
 sion, 108.  
*dejar*: with *d*, 110. 2.  
*delante de*: III.  
*de-moler*: cf. *moler*.  
*de-mostrar*: cf. *mostrar*.  
 demonstratives: 64. 6;  
 125. 7.  
*de-negar*: cf. *negar*.  
*denostrar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*dentar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*de-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
*de-re-negar*: cf. *negar*.  
*derrengar*: *pensar*-cl.,  
 84. A.  
*derretir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
*derrocar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*derruir*: *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
*des-acertar*: cf. *acertar*.  
*des-acollar*: cf. *acollar*.

- des-acordar* : cf. *acordar*.  
*des-advertir* : cf. *advertir*.  
*des-aferrar* : cf. *aferrar*.  
*des-aforar* : cf. *aforar* ;  
 (reg. as 'redeem a heritage').  
*des-alentar* : cf. *alentar*.  
*des-amoblar* : cf. *amoblar*.  
*des-andar* = *andar*, 88.  
*des-apretar* : cf. *apretar*.  
*des-aprobar* : cf. *probar*.  
*des-arrendar* : cf. *arrendar*.  
*des-a-sentar* : cf. *sentar*.  
*des-asir* = *asir*, 88.  
*des-a-sosegar* : cf. *sosegar*.  
*des-a-tender* : cf. *tender*.  
*des-a-tentar* : cf. *tentar*.  
*des-aterrar* : cf. *aterrar*.  
*des-a-traer* = *traer*, 88.  
*des-a-travesar* : cf. *travesar*.  
*des-a-venir* = *venir*, 88.  
*des-a-ventar* : cf. *ventar*.  
*descender* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*des-ceñir* : cf., *ceñir*.  
*des-colgar* : cf. *colgar*.  
*descollar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*des-comedir* : cf. *comedir*.  
*des-com-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
*des-concertar* : cf. *concertar*.  
*des-con-sentir* : cf. *sentir*.  
*des-consolar* : cf. *consolar*.  
*des-contar* : cf. *contar*.  
*des-con-venir* = *venir*, 88.
- descordar*, *pensar*-cl. 84.  
 A.  
*descornar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
*des-dar* = *dar*, 88.  
*des-decir* : cf. *decir*, 88.  
*des-dentar* : cf. *dentar*.  
*des-empedrar* : cf. *empedrar*.  
*des-encordar* : cf. *encordar*.  
*des-engrosar* : cf. *engrosar*.  
*des-en-tender* : cf. *tender*.  
*des-enterrar* : cf. *enterrar*.  
*des-en-volver* : cf. *volver*.  
*de-servir* : cf. *servir*.  
*desferrar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*desflocar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*des-hacer* = *hacer*, 88.  
*des-helar* : cf. *helar*.  
*des-herrar* : cf. *herrar*.  
*des-im-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
*des-leir* : *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
*desmarrir*, defect., 89. b.  
*desmedir* : *pedir*-cl., 84.  
 C.  
*des-melar* : cf. *melar*.  
*des-membrar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*des-mentir* : cf. *mentir*.  
*des-obstruir* : cf. *obstruir*.  
*des-oir* = *oir*, 88.  
*desolar* : *pensar*-cl., 88.  
*de-soldar* : cf. *soldar*.  
*desolar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*desollar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.
- desosar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A. (Pres. *-hueso*, 13. b). — reg. as 'not dare.'  
*desovar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A. (Pres. *huevo*, 13. b).  
*des-pedir* : cf. *pedir*.  
*despedrar* : *pensar*-cl. 84.  
 A.  
*des-pensar* : cf. *pensar*.  
*despernar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*despertar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*des-placer* : cf. *placer*.  
*des-plegar* : cf. *plegar* ;  
 (also reg.).  
*des-poblar* : cf. *poblar*.  
*des-poner* : cf. *poner*, 88.  
*des-pro-veer* : reg., cf. *ver*, 88.  
*des-tentar* : cf. *tentar*.  
*des-teñir* : cf. *teñir*.  
*desterrar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*destituir* : *huir*-cl., 84.  
 D.  
*des-torcer* : cf. *torcer*.  
*des-trocar* : cf. *trocar*.  
*destruir* : *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
*des-ventar* : cf. *ventar*.  
*desvergonzar* : *pensar*-cl. 84. A.  
*des-volver* : cf. *volver*.  
*de-tener* : cf. *tener*, 88.  
*de-traer* = *traer*, 88.  
*de trás de* : 111.  
*de-volver* : cf. *volver*.  
*dezmar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.
- diaeresis : 3. b., 13. a.

- diferir* : sentir-cl., 84. B.  
*di-fluir* : cf. *fluir*.  
*digerir* : sentir-cl., 84.  
 B.  
*di-luir* : cf. *luir*.  
*diluviar* : impers., 89. a.  
 diminutive suffixes : 35,  
 35. 2, 36, 46.  
 diphthongs : IO; in verse,  
 186. 1, 2.  
*discerner* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*discernir* : sentir-cl., 84.  
 B.  
*dis-con-venir* : cf. *venir*,  
 88.  
*discordar* : pensar-cl.,  
 84. A.  
*di-sentir* : cf. *sentir*.  
*disminuir* : *huir*-cl., 84.  
 D.  
*di-solver* : cf. *solver*.  
*di-sonar* : cf. *sonar*.  
*disparvorir*, defect., 89.  
 b.  
*dis-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
 dissyllabic vowel comps. :  
 IO; in verse, 186. 1, 2.  
*dis-tender* : cf. *tender*.  
*dis-traer* = *traer*, 88.  
*distribuir* : *huir*-cl., 84.  
 D.  
*divertir* : sentir-cl., 84.  
 B.  
*doler* : pensar-cl., 84. A.  
*dormir* : sentir-cl., 84. B.  
 e : pronunc., 9; for Lat.  
 a, i, u, I. B. — change  
 to *ie* (*ī*), 14. a, 82; or  
 to *i*, 14. b, 84.  
 é : for y 'and,' 104.  
 -ejo : suffix, 35. a.  
 el : 18; for *la*, 18. a. —  
*el mio*, etc.; use, 122.  
 — *el cual*, 68, 129.  
*elegir* : cf. *pedir*, 84. C.  
 elision : 15.  
*embair* : defect., 89. b.  
*embestir* : *pedir*-cl., 84.  
 C.  
*emendar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*empecer* : 81. I.  
*empedernir* : defect., 89.  
 b.  
*empedrar* : pensar-cl.,  
 84. A.  
*empezar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*emporcar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*en* : with infinit., 160. A.  
 4.  
*encender* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*encentar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*en-cerrar* : cf. *cerrar*.  
*en-clocar* : cf. *clocar*.  
*en-comendar* : cf. *comen-*  
*dar*.  
*encontrar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*encorar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*encordar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*encovar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*encubertar* : pensar-cl.,  
 84. A.  
*en-dentar* : cf. *dentar*.  
*engorar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*engreir* : *pedir*-cl., 84. D.  
*engrosar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*enhestar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*en-melar* : cf. *melar*.  
*enmendar* : pensar-cl.,  
 84. A.  
*en-rodar* : cf. *rodar*.  
*ensangrentar* : pensar-  
 cl., 84. A.  
*en-soñar* : cf. *soñar*.  
*en-tender* : cf. *tender*.  
*enterrar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*entortar* : pensar-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*entre-decir* = *decir*, 88.  
*entre-morir* : cf. *morir*.  
*entre-oir* = *oir*, 88.  
*entre-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
*entre-tener* = *tener*, 88.  
*entre-ver* : cf. *ver*, 88.  
*en-vestir* : cf. *vestir*.  
*en-volver* : cf. *volver*.  
*equi-valer* = *valer*, 88.  
*erguir* : 84. B. I.  
*errar* : pensar-cl., 84. A.  
 (Pr. *yerro* : 13. c.)  
*es* : init'l for Lat. s, I. C.  
 — *-es* final : accent.  
*es de* : 160. A. I.  
*escarchar* : impers., 89.  
 a.  
*escarmentar* : pensar-cl.,  
 84. A.  
*es-cocer* : cf. *cocer*.  
*escribir* : irr., 88.

- ese*: 64; position, 125.  
*es-forzar*: cf. *forzar*.  
*eso*: 64; use, 127.  
*espedir* = *expedir*.  
*estar*: irr., 88.  
*estercolar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*estregar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*estreñir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C. (and cf. 13. c.)  
*excluir*: *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
*expedir*: *pedir*-cl., 84., C.  
*ex-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
*ex-tender*: cf. *tender*.  
*ex-traer*: cf. *traer*.
- f*: pronunc., 11. — feminine: nouns, 29-34; adjectives, 40,  
*ferrar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*fluir*: *huir*-cl., 84., D.  
*follar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*forzar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*fregar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*freir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C. (partic. *freido* or *frito*)  
*fulano*: deriv. 53. — indef., 70. a. — *f. de tal*, 133; future: form'n, 71. c, f; 76; 86. 3. — use, 147.
- g*: pronunc., 11. — insert. in Pres., 86, 1. a.  
*garantir*; defect., 89. b.  
gender: nouns, 27-34. — adjectives, 40.  
*gemir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
gerund: 266-7.
- gobernar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*gruיר*: *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
*grande*: or *gran*, 15. b. — compar., 43.  
*granizar*: impers., 89. a.
- h*: pronunc., 11. — for Lat. *f, g*, 1. C. — added before *ue*, 13. b. 80.  
*haber*: irr., 88. — auxil., 90. A. — to express 'ago,' 177.  
*hacendar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*hacer*: irr., 88. — to express 'ago,' 177: 'half,' 51.  
*heder*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*helar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*henchir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
*hender*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A. (and cf. 13. c.)  
*heñir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C. (and cf. 13. C.)  
*herbar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*herir*: *sentir*-cl., 84. B.  
*herrar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*hervir*: *sentir*-cl., 84. B.  
*hi(j)odalgo*: pt., 25.  
*hielar*: impers., 39. a.  
*holgar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*hollar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
homonyms: acc't, 5. f, g; — of diff't gender and meaning, 33.  
*huir*: 84. D.  
*huir*-class: 83, 84. D.
- i*: pronunc., 9. — for Lat. *é, α*, 1. B. — accented, 5. a. — lost, 13. c. — change to *y*, 13. c.  
*-illo*: suffix, 35. 2.  
*imbuir*: *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
*impedir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
imperative: form'n, 76. — final lost, 78; 86. 2.  
imperfect: form'n, 71. c, 76. — use, 143-4. — for condit'l, 143. 1.  
*im-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
*importar*: impers., 89. a.  
*imprimir*: 88.  
*im-probar*: cf. *probar*.  
*in-censar*: cf. *censar*.  
*incluir*: *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
indeclinables: history, 93. — classes, 94-105 (cf. each). — syntax, 171.  
indefinites: article, 20; omitted, 109. — pronominals, 70; syntax, 131-7.  
indicative: cf. each tense resp.  
*in-dis-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
*in-ducir* = *ducir*, 88.  
*inferir*: *sentir*-cl., 84. B.  
*infernar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
infinitive: Lat. in Span, 71. — conjug'n sign, 74. — use, 156; as noun, 157; without preposition, 159; with preposition, 160; with que, 161; as verb, 162; as gerund, 160. B.; in exclam'n, 165; act. as pass., 164.

- in-fluir* : cf. *fluir*.  
*ingerir* (or *-jerir*) : *sentir*-cl., 84. B; part., 79.  
*-in(o)* : suffix, 35. 2.  
*inquirir* : 84. A., note 2.  
*in-seguir* : cf. *seguir*.  
*instituir* : *huir*-cl., 84.  
 D.  
*instruir* : *huir*-cl., 84.  
 D.  
*inter-decir* = *decir*, 88.  
*inter-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
 interrogative : pronominals, 67 (acc't, 5. f.) — verbs, 77. 1. — agreem., 128.  
*inter-venir* = *venir*, 88.  
*invernar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*invertir* : *sentir*-cl. 84. B.  
*in-vestir* : cf. *vestir*.  
*ir* : irr., 88. — as auxil., 90. C.  
 irregular verbs : 85–8.  
*-ito*, suffix, 35. a.  
*j* : pronunc., 11. — for Lat *x*, etc., 1. C.  
*jamás* : acc't, 5. c. — in negat'n, 99; 181. a; 181. note.  
*jugar* : 84. A. note 2.  
*la* : 18; change to *el*, 18. a. — for *le*, 54. 3. — as neut., 117. a.  
*las* : 18. — for *les*, 54. 3. — as neut., 112. 2.  
*leer* : reg. (but. cf. *i* = *y*; 13. c, 80).  
*lique-facer* = *satisfacer*, cf. *hacer*, 88.  
*ll* : 2. 1. — pronunc., 11. — *i* lost after, 13. c. — for Lat. *l*, *cl*, etc., 1. C.  
*llegar* : idiom., 178.  
*llovizar* : impers., 89. a.  
*llueve* : impers., 89. a.  
*lo* : def. art., 18, 18. b. — pron., 64; use, 117. 1; 127 : for *le*, 54. 3.  
*lord* : pl., 24.  
*m* : in the alphab., 2. 1.  
*mal* : for *malo*, 15. a. — comparis., 96.  
*mal-decir* : cf. *decir*, 88.  
*malo* : or *mal*, 15. a. — comparis., 96.  
*mal-querer* : cf. *querer*.  
*mal-sonar* : cf. *sonar*.  
*mal-traer* = *traer*, 88.  
*manifestar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*manir* : defect., 89. b.  
*man-tener* = *tener*, 88.  
*mas* : 'but,' 183; *más*, 'more,' 42, 96.  
 masculines : nouns, 28–34.  
*mecer* : 81. 1.  
*medir* : *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
*melar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*mentar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*-mente* : adv. end'g, 97.  
*mentir* : *sentir*-cl., 84. B.  
*merendar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*mi* or *mío* : 122. 2; 120.  
*mil* : 50.  
*milord* : pl. 24. c.  
*mío* : 122; or *mi*, 122. 2.  
*mismo* : 53; 70. c.  
*moblar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*moler* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*molliznar* : impers., 89. a.  
*morder* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*morir* : *sentir*-cl., 84. B. (part. *muerto*, note 2.)  
*mostrar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*mover* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*mucho* : comparis., 96. — use, 173.  
*muerto* : 84. B. 2.  
*muy* : use, 173.  
*n* : with tilde (*ñ*), 2.  
*nada* : 70. a. — use, 132.  
*nadie* : 70. a. — use, 132.  
*negar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A. negation : 99, 179.  
*nevar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.; impers., 89. a.  
*ni* : 99.  
*ninguno* : 53; 70. c.; 136.  
*no* : use, 99, 132, 136, 180.  
 nouns : history, 21; pl. 23–5; diff't senses in sing. and pl., 26; gender, 27–33.  
 numerals : history, 47; list, 48; infl., 49; card. for ord., 114 : idioms, 115.  
*nunca* : 99; 181. b; 181. note.



- ñ*: orig., 1. C.—sign, 2.  
—pronunc., 11.
- o*: pronunc., 9.—for Lat.  
*u*, *au*, 1. B.—final lost,  
15. a.—change to *ue*,  
(*ū*), 14. a., 82, 84.—  
change to *u*, 14. b., 82,  
84.—*o*, ‘or,’ changed  
to *ú*, 104.
- object: direct with *á*,  
110.
- obscurecer*: impers., 89. a.
- obstruir*: *huir*-cl., 84. D.
- ob-tener*—*tener*, 88.
- oir*: irr., 88.—constr.,  
159. 1.
- oler*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
(Pres. *huelo*, 13. b.)
- on*: suffix, 35. 1.
- o-poner* = *poner*, 88.
- oprimir*: 79.
- orthographic changes:  
gen’ly, 13; in verbs,  
80-1.
- ote*: suffix, 40. a.—  
gend. 40. a.
- otro*: 70. c.—use, 134.
- p*: in the alphab., 2. 1.
- para*: use, 111; 160. A.  
5; 170.
- participles: fr. Lat., 71. 2.  
—form, 168.—absol.  
use, 169.—with *para*,  
170.
- passive verb: 90. b.—  
replaced by refl., 139.
- pedir*: 84. C.
- pedir*-class: 83, 84. C.
- pensar*: 84. A.
- pensar*-class: 83, 84. A.
- pequeño*: comparis., 43.
- perder*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
A.—with *d*, 110. 2.
- pero*: constr’n, 183.
- periphrastic verbs: 90.
- per-seguir*: cf. *seguir*.
- personal accusative: 110.
- personals: 54-9.—posi-  
tion, 57-8, 120.—syn-  
tax, 116-120.
- pervertir*: *sentir*-cl., 84.  
B.
- phonetic change: gen’l,  
14.—in verbs, 82.
- placer*: irr., 88.
- plegar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- plural: nouns, 23-5;  
adjectives, 39.
- poblar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
A.
- poco*: comparis., 90.
- poder*: irr., 88.
- podrir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.
- poner*: irr., 88.
- porque*: fin. tone, 5. e.
- pos-poner* = *poner*, 88.
- possessives: 60-3.—  
agreem., 121.—*mío*  
—or *el mío*, etc., 122.—  
explet. constr., 123.—  
replaced by def. art.,  
124.
- pre-decir* = *decir*, 88.
- pre-dis-poner* = *poner*,  
88.
- preferir*: *sentir*-cl., 84.  
B.
- pre-morir*: cf. *morir*.
- prender*: 79.
- pre-poner* = *poner*, 88.
- prepositions: 100.—with  
nouns, 110-111.—  
with infinit. 160.
- present: princ. part, 76.  
—irreg. form’n, 71. f;  
82; 86. 1.—use, 142;  
154.
- preso*: 79.
- preterit: princ. part, 76.  
—irreg. form’n, 71. f,  
84. B., C; 86. 4.—use,  
145.
- pre-valer* = *valgo*, 88.
- pre-venir* = *venir*, 88.
- pre-ver* = *ver*, 88.
- probar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- proferir*: *sentir*-cl., 84.  
B.
- progressive phrases: 90.  
C.
- pro-mover*: cf. *mover*.
- pronouns: history, 53,  
and cf. each.—syntax,  
116-137.
- pronunciation: 8-11.
- pro-poner* = *poner*, 88.
- pro-seguir*: cf. *seguir*.
- prostituir*: *huir*-cl., 84.  
D.
- proveer*: cf. *ver*, 88.
- pro-venir* = *venir*, 88.
- puer*: cf. 84. C (note).
- punctuation: 16.
- q*: in the alphab., 2. 1.  
quantity, 6.
- que*: ‘than,’ 45.—rel.  
pron., 68; use, 129.—  
after *no*, 99.—omit-  
ted, 151. a. 2.—with  
infinit., 161.



- quebrar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*quedar*: as auxil., 90  
 B.  
*querer*: irr., 88.— with  
*d*, 110. 2.  
*quien, quién*: 67, 68;  
 use, 129.  
*quienquier(a)*: 53, 70. a.  
*r*: pronunc., 11.  
*raer*, obsolete (conj. =  
*caer*, 88).  
*re-apretar*: cf. *apretar*.  
*re-caer* = *caer*, 88.  
*re-calentar*: cf. *calentar*.  
*re-centar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*recien*: use, 174.  
 reciprocal verb: 91, 91.  
 2.  
*recluir*: *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
*re-cocer*: cf. *cocer*.  
*re-colar*: cf. *colar*.  
*recomendar*: *pensar*-cl.,  
 84. A.  
*re-com-poner* = *poner*,  
 88.  
*ae-construir*: cf. *con-*  
*struir*.  
*re-contar*: cf. *contar*.  
*re-con-venir* = *venir*, 88.  
*recordar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*recostar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*redoler*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*re-ducir* = *ducir*, 88.  
*referir*: *sentir*-cl., 84. B.  
 reflexive: pron., 91-2. —  
 verb, 91; for pass., 139.  
*re-fluir*: cf. *fluir*.  
*re-forzar*: cf. *forzar*.  
*re-fregar*: cf. *fregar*.  
*re-freir*: cf. *freir*.  
*regar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*régimen*: pl., 24. a.  
*regimentar*: *pensar*-cl.,  
 84. A.  
*regir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
*regoldar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*re-hacer* = *hacer*, 88.  
*re-herir*: cf. *herir*.  
*re-hervir*: cf. *hervir*.  
*re-hollar*: cf. *hollar*.  
*re-huir*: cf. *huir*.  
*reir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
 (and cf. 13. c).  
*relampagar*: impers.,  
 89. a.  
 relatives: 68-9; synt.,  
 128.  
*remendar*: *pensar*-cl.,  
 84. A.  
*re-molar*: cf. *molar*.  
*re-moler*: cf. *moler*.  
*re-morder*: cf. *morder*.  
*re-mover*: cf. *mover*.  
*rendir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
*re-negar*: cf. *negar*.  
*renovar*: *pensar*-cl. 84.  
 A.  
*reñir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
 (and cf. 13. c).  
*re-pedir*: cf. *pedir*.  
*re-pensar*: cf. *pensar*, 84.  
 A.  
*repetir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
*re-plegar*: cf. *plegar*.  
*re-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
*re-probar*: cf. *probar*.  
*re-quebrar*: cf. *quebrar*.  
*re-querer* = *querer*, 88.  
*requerir*: *sentir*-cl., 84.  
 B.  
*re-saber* = *saber*, 88.  
*re-salir* = *salir*, 88.  
*re-sembrar*: cf. *sembrar*  
*re-sentir* = *sentir*, 84. B.  
*re-solver*: cf. *solver*.  
*re-sollar*: cf. *sollar*.  
*re-sonar*: cf. *sonar*.  
*res-quebrar*: cf. *quebrar*.  
*restituir*: *huir*-cl., 84.  
 D.  
*restregar*: *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*re-temblar*: cf. *temblar*.  
*re-tener* = *tener*, 88.  
*re-tentar*: cf. *tentar*.  
*re-teñir*: cf. *teñir*.  
*re-torcer*: cf. *torcer*.  
*re-tostar*: cf. *tostar*.  
*ee-traer* = *traer*, 88.  
*retribuir*: *huir*-cl., 84.  
 D.  
*re-tronar*: cf. *tronar*.  
*retro-traer* = *traer*, 88.  
*re-venir* = *venir*, 88.  
*re-ventar*: cf. *ventar*.  
*re-ver* = *ver*, 88.  
*re-verter*: cf. *verter*.  
*re-vestir*: cf. *vestir*.  
*re-volar*: cf. *volar*.  
*re-volcar*: cf. *volcar*.  
*re-volver*: cf. *volver*.  
 rhyme: 187.  
*robar*: with *á*, 110. 2.  
*rodar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*roer*: 89. c.  
*rogar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*romper*: 79.

- s*: pronunc., II.— plur. sign.—final lost, 78.  
*saber*: irr., 88.  
*salir*: irr., 88.  
*santo* or *san*: 15. b.  
*sarmentar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*satisfacer*: cf. *hacer*, 88.  
*se*: refl., 54, 91 (recipr., 91. 2.).— for *le, les*, 59.  
*segar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*seguir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C (and cf. 13. a).  
*sembrar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*sementar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*sendos*: 53, 70. b.  
*sentar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*sentir*: 84. B.  
*sentir*-class: 83, 84. B.  
*ser*: irr., 88.— as auxil., 90. b.  
*serrar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*servir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
*si*: 'if,' 175; *si*, 'yes,' 176.  
*sino*: fin. tone, 5. e.— use, 99, 183.  
*sobre-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
*sobre-salir* = *salir*, 88.  
*sobre-venir* = *venir*, 88.  
*so-freir*: cf. *freir*.  
*solar*; *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*soldar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*soler*: 89. d.  
*soltar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*solver*: 84. A (part. *suelto*, note 1).  
*sallar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*so-mover*: cf. *mover*.  
*sonar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- son-reir*: cf. *reir*.  
*son-rodar*: cf. *rodar*.  
*soñar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A. (*a-sonar, con-sonar*, also reg.)  
*sor-regar*: cf. *regar*.  
*sosegar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*sos-tener* = *tener*, 88.  
*soterrar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.
- Spanish words in English, 189-91.— subject after verb, 186.— subjunctive: form'n, 76.— INDEP'T, 149.— DEPEND'T: gen'l 150; I. subj. of unrealised completion, 151; II. subj. of emotion, 152; III. subj. of mental reserve, 153.— use of tenses, 154.
- sub-arrendar*: cf. *arrendar*.  
*substituir*: *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
*sub-venir* = *venir*, 88.  
*sub-vertir*: *sentir*-cl., 84. B.
- suffixes: 35-6, 46.  
*sugerir*: *sentir*-cl., 84. B.  
 superlative: of adj's, 42-4 (absol., 44).— of adv., 96.  
*super-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
*super-venir* = *venir*, 88.  
*su-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
*suprimir*: 79.  
*sustituir*: *huir*-cl., 84. D.  
*sus-traer* = *traer*, 88.  
 syllabication: 7.
- t*: in the alphabet, 2. I.  
*tal*: 70. I.; use, 135.  
*tampoco*: 182.  
*tanto* or *tan*: 173.  
*temblar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*tender*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*tener*: irr., 88.— as auxiliary, 90. A.  
*tentar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*teñir*: *pedir*-cl., 84. C. (and cf. 13. c).  
*tilde*: 2.  
 time: expr., 115.  
*todo*: 70. I, 137.  
 tone-accent: 4.  
 tonic pronominals: 53, 54, 60.  
*torcer*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*tostar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*tra-ducir* = *ducir*, 88.  
*traer*: irr., 88.  
*trans*-.: cf. also *tras*-.  
*tra(n)scender*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*trans-fregar*: cf. *fregar*.  
*trans-poner* = *poner*.  
*trás*: III.— *tras*-, cf. also *trans*-.  
*trascender*: cf. *transc*-.  
*tras-colar*: cf. *colar*.  
*trascordar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*trasegar*: *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*trasferir*: *sentir*-cl., 84. B.  
*tra-soñar*: cf. *soñar*.  
*tras-poner* = *poner*, 88.  
*tras-verter*: cf. *verter*.  
*tras-volar*: cf. *volar*.

- travesar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*trocar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*tronar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*tropezar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*truenaar* : impers., 89. a.  
*tume-facer* : cf. *hacer*,  
 88.  
*u* : pronunc., 9. — for  
 Lat. *o*, I. B. — acc'd, 5.  
*ú* : 'or', for *o*, 104.  
*-ucho* : suffix, 35. 1.  
*-uelo* : suff., 35. 2.  
*uno* : or *un*, 15. a.; 20,  
 70. c.  
*usted* : use, 56, 63; 123.  
*v* : in alphabet, 2. 1.  
*valer* : irr., 88.  
*venir* : irr., 88.  
*ventar* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*ventear* : impers., 89. a.  
*ventiscar* : impers., 89. a.  
*ver* : irr., 88. — with in-  
 finit., 159. 1.  
 verbs : history, 71. — con-  
 jugation, 74. — reg.  
 and irreg., 75. — prin.  
 parts, 70. — reg. 77. —  
 orthogr. changes, 80-1.  
 — phon. changes, 82-  
 4. — irr., 85-8. — de-  
 fect., 89. — agreem't,  
 138. — voice, 139. —  
 indic., 141 (cf. each  
 tense). — subjunct.  
 (which cf.).  
 versification : 184-8.  
*verter* : *pensar*-cl., 84.  
 A.  
*vestir* : *pedir*-cl., 84. C.  
*volar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*volcar* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
*volver* : *pensar*-cl., 84. A.  
 (part. *vuelto*, note 1).  
 vowels : history, I. B. —  
 pronunc. 8-10.  
*y* : pronunc., 9. — for *i*,  
 13. c. — added in pres't,  
 86. 1. b. — *y*, 'and,'  
 changed to *é*, 104.  
*yacer* : irr., 88.  
 'you(r)': cf. *usted*.  
*yuxta-poner* = *poner*,  
 88.  
*z* : pronunc., 11. — use,  
 13. a., 23. 1; 80, 81.  
*zaherir* : *sentir*-cl., 84. B.  
*-zuelo* : suffix, 35. 2.  
*zutano* : 53, 70. a.



# Heath's Modern Language Series.

*Introduction prices are quoted unless otherwise stated.*

## SCANDINAVIAN.

**Groth's Danish Grammar.** Contains grammar enough for the ordinary purposes of students. Cloth. 160 pages. \$1.00.

## SPANISH.

**Edgren's Spanish Grammar.** Gives all the grammar needed for correct and intelligent reading. Cloth. 123 pages. 80 cts.

**Ybarra's Practical Method in Spanish.** For those who wish to obtain a practical command of the language without entering into its grammatical structure. Cloth. 319 pages. Retail price, \$1.00.

**Cervantes' Don Quixote.** The first twelve books, with introduction, notes, and vocabulary by Professor Todd of Columbia College. Cloth. 000 pages. *In preparation.*

**First Spanish Readings.** Modern Spanish stories with notes and vocabulary for beginners in Spanish, by Professor Matzke of the Leland Stanford University. \$1.00.

## ITALIAN.

**Grandgent's Italian Grammar.** Gives all the grammar needed by the ordinary student of Italian. Cloth. 132 pages. 80 cts.

**Grandgent's Italian Composition.** Furnishes supplementary exercises to accompany the grammar, followed by a course in more advanced composition. Cloth. 103 pages. 60 cts.

**First Italian Readings.** Modern Italian stories with notes and vocabulary for beginners in Italian, by Professor Bowen of the Ohio State University. 90 cts.

**Gherardi's del Testa's L'Oro e L'Orpello.** Comedy. Edited with notes by C. H. Thurber of Cornell. Paper. 72 pages. 25 cts.

## PEDAGOGICAL.

**Methods of Teaching Modern Languages.** Papers on the value and on methods of teaching the modern languages. A valuable book for any instructor. Cloth. 227 pages. Retail price, 90 cts.

---

*Complete catalogue of Modern Language texts sent on request.*

---

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS,

BOSTON. NEW YORK. CHICAGO. LONDON.

# Heath's Modern Language Series.

*Introduction prices are quoted unless otherwise stated.*

## FRENCH GRAMMARS AND READERS.

- Edgren's Compendious French Grammar.** A *working* grammar for high school or college; adapted to the needs of the beginner and the advanced student. Half leather, \$1.12.
- Edgren's French Grammar, Part I.** For those who wish to learn quickly to read French. 35 cts.
- Supplementary Exercises to Edgren's French Grammar (Locard).** French-English and English-French exercises to accompany each lesson. 12 cts.
- Grandgent's Short French Grammar.** Brief and easy, yet complete enough for all elementary work, and abreast of the best scholarship and practical experience of to-day. 60 cts. With LESSONS AND EXERCISES, 75 cts.
- Grandgent's French Lessons and Exercises.** Necessarily used with the SHORT FRENCH GRAMMAR. *First Year's Course for High Schools, No. 1*; *First Year's Course for Colleges, No. 1*. Limp cloth. Introduction price, each 15 cts.
- Grandgent's French Lessons and Exercises.** *First Year's Course for Grammar Schools.* Limp cloth. 59 pages. 25 cents. *Second Year's Course for Grammar Schools.* Limp cloth. 72 pages. 30 cts.
- Grandgent's Materials for French Composition.** Five graded pamphlets based on *La Pife de Jean Bart*, *La dernière classe*, *Le Siège de Berlin*, *Peppino*, *L'Abbé Constantin*, respectively. Each, 12 cts.
- Grandgent's French Composition.** Elementary, progressive and varied selections, with full notes and vocabulary. Cloth. 150 pages. 50 cts.
- Kimball's Materials for French Composition.** Based on *Colomba*, for second year's work; based on *La Belle-Nivernaise* for third year's work. Each, 12 cts.
- Storr's Hint on French Syntax.** With exercises. Interleaved. Limp cloth. 30 cts.
- Marcou's French Review Exercises.** With notes and vocabulary. Limp cloth. 34 pages. 20 cts.
- Houghton's French by Reading.** Begins with interlinear, and gives in the course of the book the whole of elementary grammar, with reading matter, notes, and vocabulary. Half leather. \$1.12.
- Hotchkiss's Le Premier Livre de Français.** A purely conversational introduction to French, for young pupils. Boards. Illustrated. 79 pages. 35 cts.
- Fontaine's Livre de Lecture et de Conversation.** Entirely in French. Combines Reading, Conversation, and Grammar. Cloth. 90 cts.
- Fontaine's Lectures Courantes.** Can follow the above. Contains Reading, Conversation, and English Exercises based on the text. Cloth. \$1.00.
- Lyon and Larpent's Primary French Translation Book.** An easy beginning reader, with very full notes, vocabulary, and English exercises based on the latter part of the text. Cloth. 60 cts.
- Super's Preparatory French Reader.** Complete and graded selections of interesting French, with notes and vocabulary. Half leather. 70 cts.
- French Fairy Tales (Joynes).** With notes, vocabulary, and English exercises based on the text. Boards, 35 cts.
- Davies's Elementary Scientific French Reader.** For beginners and confined to Scientific French. With notes and vocabulary. Boards. 136 pages. 40 cts.
- Heath's French-English and English-French Dictionary.** Recommended at all the colleges as fully adequate for the ordinary wants of students. Cloth. Retail price, \$1.50.



# Heath's Modern Language Series.

## ELEMENTARY FRENCH TEXTS.

- Jules Verne's L'Expédition de la Jeune-Hardie.** With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by W. S. Lyon. Boards. 95 pages. 25 cts.
- Gervais's Un Cas de Conscience.** With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by R. P. Horsley. Boards. 86 pages. 25 cts.
- Génin's Le Petit Tailleur Bouton.** With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by W. S. Lyon. Paper. 88 pages. 25 cts.
- Assollant's Une Aventure du Célèbre Pierrot.** With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by R. E. Pain. Paper. 93 pages. 25 cts.
- Muller's Les Grandes Découvertes Modernes.** Talks on Photography and Telegraphy. With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by F. E. B. Wale. Paper. 88 pages. 25 cts.
- Récits de Guerre et de Révolution.** Selected and edited, with notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by B. Minssen. Paper. 91 pages. 25 cts.
- Bruno's Les Enfants Patriotes.** With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by W. S. Lyon. Paper. 94 pages. 25 cts.
- Bedollière's La Mère Michel et son Chat.** With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by W. S. Lyon. Boards. 96 pages. 25 cts.
- Legouvé and Labiche's La Cigale chez les Fourmis.** A comedy in one act, with notes by W. H. Witherby. Boards. 56 pages. 20 cts.
- Labiche and Martin's Le Voyage de M. Perrichon.** A comedy with introduction and notes by Professor B. W. Wells, of the University of the South. Boards. 108 pages. 25 cts.
- Labiche and Martin's La Poudre aux Yeux.** Comedy with notes by Professor B. W. Wells, University of the South. Boards. 92 pages. 25 cts.
- Dumas's L'Evasion du Duc de Beaufort.** With notes by D. B. Kitchen. Boards. 91 pages. 25 cts.
- Assollant's Récits de la Vieille France.** With notes by E. B. Wauton. Paper. 78 pages. 25 cts.
- Berthet's Le Pacte de Famine.** With notes by B. B. Dickinson. Boards. 94 pages. 25 cts.
- Eckmann-Chatrion's L'Histoire d'un Paysan.** With notes by W. S. Lyon. Paper. 94 pages. 25 cts.
- France's Abeille.** With notes by C. P. Lebon of the Boston English High School. Paper. 94 pages. 25 cts.
- La Main Malheureuse.** With complete and detailed vocabulary, by H. A. Guerber, Nyack, N. Y. Boards. 106 pages. 25 cts.
- Enault's Le Chien du Capitaine.** With notes and vocabulary, by C. Fontaine, Director of French in the High Schools of Washington, D. C. Boards. 142 pages. 35 cts.
- Trois Contes Choisis par Daudet.** (*Le Siège de Berlin, La dernière Classe, La Mule du Pape.*) With notes by Professor Sanderson of Harvard. Paper. 15 cts.
- Halévy's L'Abbé Constantin.** Edited with notes, by Professor Thomas Logie, of Rutgers College. Boards. 160 pages. 35 cts.
- Eckmann-Chatrion's Le Conscrit de 1813.** With notes and vocabulary by Professor O. B. Super, Dickinson College. Cloth. 216 pages. 65 cts. Boards. 45 cts.
- Selections for Sight Translation.** Fifty fifteen-line French extracts compiled by Miss Bruce of the High School, Newton, Mass. Paper. 38 pages. 15 cts.

# Heath's Modern Language Series.

*Introduction prices are quoted unless otherwise stated.*

## INTERMEDIATE FRENCH TEXTS.

(Partial List.)

- About's Le Roi des Montagnes.** Edited by Professor Thomas Logie, Boards. 238 pages. 40 cts.
- Pailleron's Le Monde où l'on s'ennuie.** A comedy with notes by Professor Pendleton of Bethany College, W. Va. Boards. 138 pages. 30 cts.
- Souvestre's Le Mari de Mme de Solange.** With notes by Professor Super of Dickinson College. Paper. 59 pages. 20 cts.
- Historiettes Modernes, Vol. I.** Short modern stories, selected and edited, with notes, by C. Fontaine, Director of French in the High Schools of Washington, D. C. Cloth. 162 pages. 60 cts.
- Historiettes Modernes, Vol. II.** Short stories as above. Cloth. 160 pages. 60 cts.
- Fleurs de France.** A collection of short and choice French stories of recent date, with notes by C. Fontaine, Washington, D. C. Cloth, 158 pages. 60 cts.
- Sandeau's Mlle de la Seiglière.** With introduction and notes by Professor Warren of Adelbert College. Boards. 158 pages. 30 cts.
- Souvestre's Un Philosophe sous les Toits.** With notes and vocabulary by Professor Frazer of the University of Toronto. Cloth. 283 pages. 80 cts.  
— Without vocabulary. Cloth. 178 pages. 50 cts.
- Souvestre's Les Confessions d'un Ouvrier.** With notes by Professor Super of Dickinson College. Paper. 127 pages. 30 cts.
- Augier's Le Gendre de M. Poirier.** One of the masterpieces of modern Comedy. Edited by Professor B. W. Wells, of the University of the South. Boards. 118 pages, 30 cts.
- Mérimée's Colomba.** With notes by Professor J. A. Fontaine of Bryn Mawr College. 192 pages. Cloth, 60 cts.; boards, 35 cts.
- Mérimée's Chronique du Règne de Charles IX.** With notes by Professor P. Desages, Cheltenham College, England. Paper. 119 pages. 25 cts.
- Sand's La Mare au Diable.** With notes by Professor F. C. de Sumichrast of Harvard. Boards. 122 pages. 25 cts.
- Sand's La Petite Fadette.** With notes by F. Aston-Binns, Balliol College, Oxford, England. Boards. 142 pages. 30 cts.
- De Vigny's Le Cachet Rouge.** With notes by Professor Fortier of Tulane University. Paper. 60 pages. 20 cts.
- De Vigny's La Canne de Jonc.** Edited by Professor V. J. T. Spiers, with Introduction by Professor Cohn of Columbia University. Boards. 218 pages. 40 cts.

*Complete Catalogue of Modern Language texts sent on request.*

# Heath's Modern Language Series.

*Introduction prices are quoted unless otherwise stated.*

## INTERMEDIATE FRENCH TEXTS.

(Partial List.)

- Victor Hugo's La Chute.** From *Les Mistrables*. Edited with notes by Professor Huss of Princeton. Boards. 97 pages. 25 cts.
- Victor Hugo's Bug Jargal.** With notes by Professor Boëlle of Dulwich College, England. Boards. 238 pages. 40 cts.
- Erckmann-Chatrion's Waterloo.** Abridged and annotated by Professor O. B. Super of Dickinson College. Boards. 189 pages. 35 cts.
- Champfleury's Le Violon de Faïence.** With notes by Professor Clovis Bévenot, Mason College, England. Paper. 118 pages. 25 cts.
- Gautier's Voyage en Espagne.** With notes by H. C. Steel. Paper. 112 pages. 25 cts.
- Balzac's Le Curé de Tours.** With notes by Professor C. R. Carter, Wellington College, England. Boards. 98 pages. 25 cts.
- Daudet's La Belle-Nivernaise.** With notes by Professor Boëlle of Dulwich College, England. Boards. 104 pages. 25 cts.
- Theuriet's Bigarreau.** With notes by C. Fontaine, Washington, D. C. Boards. 68 pages. 25 cts.
- Advanced Selections for Sight Translation.** Extracts, twenty to fifty lines long, compiled by Mme. T. F. Colin of Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn Mawr, Pa. Paper. 48 pages. 15 cts.
- Dumas's La Question d'Argent.** A comedy, with introduction and notes, by G. N. Henning, Assistant in French, Harvard University. Boards. 136 pages. 30 cts.
- Dumas's La Tulipe Noire.** With notes by Professor C. Fontaine, Central High School, Washington, D. C. Boards. 220 pages. 40 cts.
- Lesage's Gil Blas.** Abbreviated and edited, with introduction and notes, by Professor Cohn, of Columbia University, and Professor Sanderson, formerly of Harvard University. Boards. 224 pages. 40 cts.
- Sarcey's Le Siège de Paris.** With introduction and notes by Professor I. H. B. Spiers, of William Penn Charter School, Philadelphia. Boards. 188 pages. 35 cts.
- Loti's Pêcheur d'Islande.** With notes by R. J. Morich. Boards. 30 cts.
- Beaumarchais's Le Barbier de Séville.** Comedy in four acts, with introduction and notes by Professor I. H. B. Spiers of William Penn Charter School. Boards. 25 cts.

*Complete catalogue of Modern Language texts sent on request.*

---

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS,

Boston,

New York,

Chicago,

London.

# Heath's Modern Language Series.

*Introduction prices are quoted unless otherwise stated.*

## ADVANCED FRENCH TEXTS.

- De Vigny's Cinq Mars.** An abbreviated edition with introduction and notes by Professor Sankey of Harrow School, England. Cloth. 292 pages. 80 cts.
- Zola's La Débâcle.** Abbreviated and annotated by Professor Wells, of the University of the South. Cloth. 292 pages. 80 cts.
- Choix d'Extraits de Daudet.** Selected and edited with notes by William Price, Instructor in Yale University. Paper. 61 pages. 20 cts.
- Sept Grands Auteurs du XIX<sup>e</sup> Siècle.** Lectures in easy French on Lamartine, Hugo, de Vigny, de Musset, Gautier, Mérimée, Coppée, by Professor Fortier of Tulane University. Cloth. 160 pages. 60 cts.
- French Lyrics.** Selected and edited with notes by Professor Bowen of the University of Ohio. Cloth. 198 pages. 60 cts.
- Victor Hugo's Hernani.** With introduction and notes by Professor Matzke of Leland Stanford University. Cloth, 228 pages. 70 cts.
- Victor Hugo's Ruy Blas.** With introduction and notes by Professor Garner of the U. S. Naval Academy, Annapolis. Cloth. 253 pages. 75 cts.
- Racine's Esther.** With introduction, notes, and appendices by Professor I. H. B. Spiers of William Penn Charter School. Paper. 110 pages. 25 cts.
- Racine's Athalie.** With introduction and notes by Professor Eggert of Vanderbilt University. 156 pages. Cloth, 50 cts.; boards, 30 cts.
- Racine's Andromaque.** With introduction and notes by Professor B. W. Wells of the University of the South. Boards. 000 pages. 30 cts.
- Corneille's Le Cid.** With introduction and notes by Professor Warren of Adelbert College. 164 pages. Cloth, 50 cts.; boards, 30 cts.
- Corneille's Polyucte.** With introduction and notes by Professor Fortier of Tulane University. Boards. 138 pages. 30 cts.
- Molière's Le Misanthrope.** With introduction and notes, by Professor C. A. Eggert, Boards. 000 pages. 30 cts.
- Molière's Les Femmes Savantes.** With introduction and notes by Professor Fortier of Tulane University. 143 pages. 30 cts.
- Molière's Le Tartuffe.** With footnotes by Professor Gasc, England. Boards. 25 cts.
- Molière's Le Médecin Malgré Lui.** With footnotes by Professor Gasc, England. Paper. 57 pages. 15 cts.
- Molière's Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme.** With introduction and notes by Professor F. M. Warren of Adelbert College. Boards. 138 pages. 30 cts.
- Piron's La Métromanie.** Comedy in verse, with notes by Professor Delbos, England. Paper. 180 pages. 40 cts.
- Warren's Primer of French Literature.** An historical handbook. Cloth. 256 pages. 75 cts.
- Taine's Introduction à l'Histoire de la Littérature Anglaise.** With essay on Taine by Irving Babbitt of Harvard University. Paper. 48 pages. 20 cts.
- Duval's Histoire de la Littérature Française.** In easy French. From earliest times to the present. Cloth. 348 pages. \$1.12.
- Voltaire's Prose.** Selected and edited by Professors Cohn and Woodward of Columbia University. Cloth. 479 pages. \$1.50.
- La Triade Française.** Poems of Lamartine, Musset and Hugo, with introductions and notes by L. Both-Hendriksen. Cloth. 212 pages. 75 cts.





# Beath's Modern Language Series.

*Introduction prices are quoted unless otherwise stated.*

## ADVANCED FRENCH TEXTS.

- De Vigny's Cinq Mars.** An abbreviated edition with introduction and notes by Professor Sankey of Harrow School, England. Cloth. 292 pages. 80 cts.
- Zola's La Débâcle.** Abbreviated and annotated by Professor Wells, of the University of the South. Cloth. 292 pages. 80 cts.
- Choix d'Extraits de Daudet.** Selected and edited with notes by William Price, Instructor in Yale University. Paper. 61 pages. 20 cts.
- Sept Grands Auteurs du XIX<sup>e</sup> Siècle.** Lectures in easy French on Lamartine, Hugo, de Vigny, de Musset, Gautier, Mérimée, Coppée, by Professor Fortier of Tulane University. Cloth. 160 pages. 60 cts.
- French Lyrics.** Selected and edited with notes by Professor Bowen of the University of Ohio. Cloth. 198 pages. 60 cts.
- Victor Hugo's Hernani.** With introduction and notes by Professor Matzke of Leland Stanford University. Cloth, 228 pages. 70 cts.
- Victor Hugo's Ruy Blas.** With introduction and notes by Professor Garner of the U. S. Naval Academy, Annapolis. Cloth. 253 pages. 75 cts.
- Racine's Esther.** With introduction, notes, and appendices by Professor I. H. B. Spiers of William Penn Charter School. Paper. 110 pages. 25 cts.
- Racine's Athalie.** With introduction and notes by Professor Eggert of Vanderbilt University. 156 pages. Cloth, 50 cts.; boards, 30 cts.
- Racine's Andromaque.** With introduction and notes by Professor B. W. Wells of the University of the South. Boards. 000 pages. 30 cts.
- Corneille's Le Cid.** With introduction and notes by Professor Warren of Adelbert College. 164 pages. Cloth, 50 cts.; boards, 30 cts.
- Corneille's Polyucte.** With introduction and notes by Professor Fortier of Tulane University. Boards. 138 pages. 30 cts.
- Molière's Le Misanthrope.** With introduction and notes, by Professor C. A. Eggert, Boards. 000 pages. 30 cts.
- Molière's Les Femmes Savantes.** With introduction and notes by Professor Fortier of Tulane University. 143 pages. 30 cts.
- Molière's Le Tartuffe.** With footnotes by Professor Gasc, England. Boards. 25 cts.
- Molière's Le Médecin Malgré Lui.** With footnotes by Professor Gasc, England. Paper. 57 pages. 15 cts.
- Molière's Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme.** With introduction and notes by Professor F. M. Warren of Adelbert College. Boards. 138 pages. 30 cts.
- Piron's La Métromanie.** Comedy in verse, with notes by Professor Delbos, England. Paper. 180 pages. 40 cts.
- Warren's Primer of French Literature.** An historical handbook. Cloth. 256 pages. 75 cts.
- Taine's Introduction à l'Histoire de la Littérature Anglaise.** With essay on Taine by Irving Babbitt of Harvard University. Paper. 48 pages. 20 cts.
- Duval's Histoire de la Littérature Française.** In easy French. From earliest times to the present. Cloth. 348 pages. \$1.12.
- Voltaire's Prose.** Selected and edited by Professors Cohn and Woodward of Columbia University. Cloth. 479 pages. \$1.50.
- La Triade Française.** Poems of Lamartine, Musset and Hugo, with introductions and notes by L. Both-Hendriksen. Cloth. 212 pages. 75 cts.







1870

47129

Author Edgren, August Hjalmar

LaS.Gr

E237b

Title Brief Spanish grammar.

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO  
LIBRARY

Do not  
remove  
the card  
from this  
Pocket.

Acme Library Card Pocket  
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File."  
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU

